

PA 2087

.B92

1906

Copy 1



Class PA2087

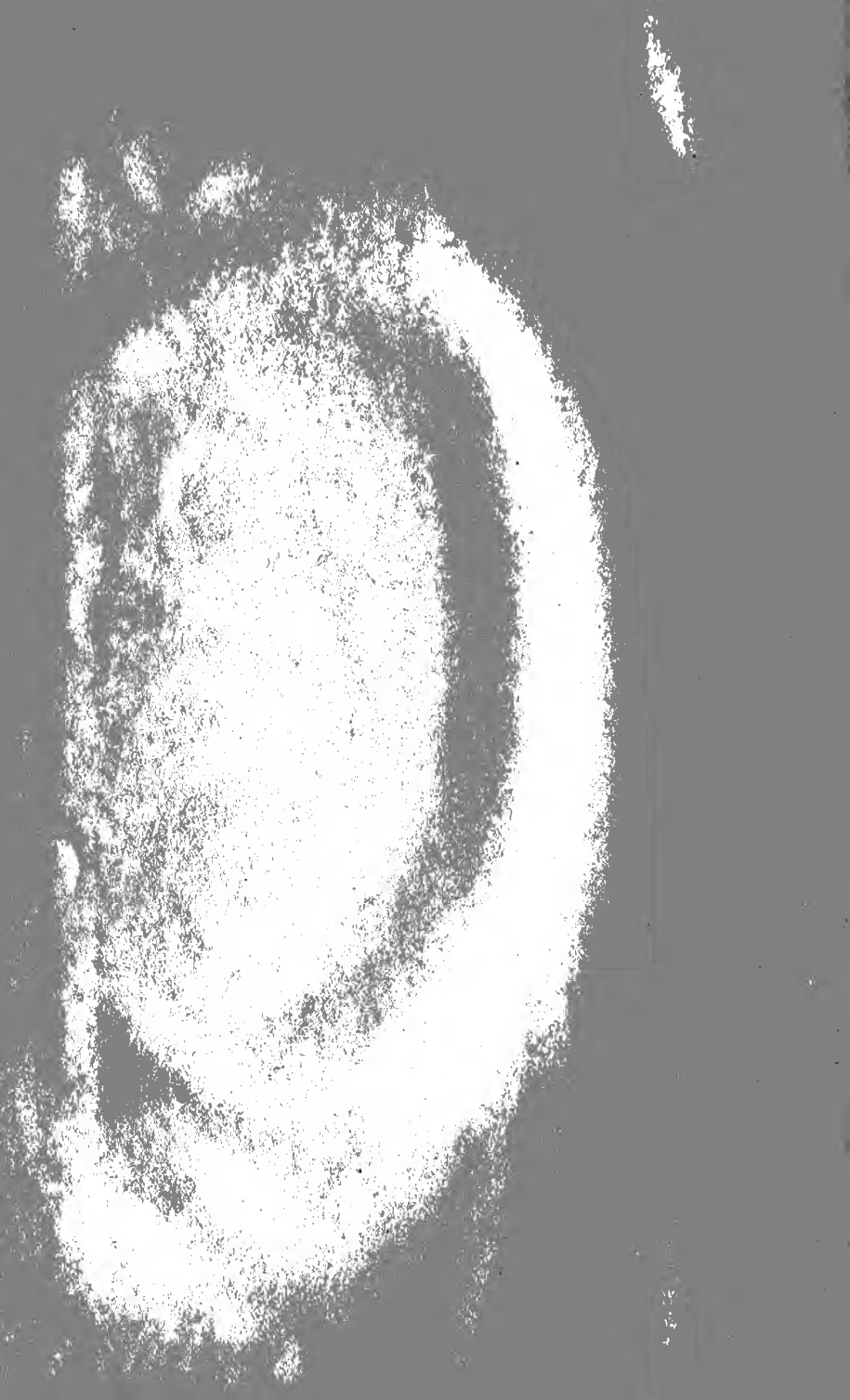
Book B92
1906

Copyright N^o

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.







A LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR
SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

FOR PRIVATE CIRCULATION

*Fredrick Joseph
"June 12, 1892"*

3
3
3
3
3

BUFFALO, N. Y.

PA 2087
B92
1906

LIBRARY of CONGRESS	
Two Copies Received	
AUG 24 1906	
Copyright Entry	
Aug 17, 1906	
CLASS <i>a</i>	XXc. No.
153368	
COPY B.	

34
11841

COPYRIGHT, 1906,
BY
CHARLES JOSEPH WEBER
BUFFALO, N. Y.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

1
C
C
C
C
C
C
C

PREFACE

This grammar does not aim to be a text-book of advanced Latin philology, but a **practical guide** in a systematic study of the Latin language.

A practical definition of "**stem**" was preferred to a scientific one.

The **order of cases**—Nominative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, Ablative—will, it is expected, enable the student to both understand and memorize the paradigms more easily than in the accustomed order.

Instead of the Vocative which, properly, is no case, the "**Form of Address**" has been introduced.

The short **Rules of Gender** etc., while omitting such exceptions as burden the memory most unprofitably, include everything needed for reading the school-authors.

In the list of verbs the **Infinitive**, as the most important verbal form, (pointing out the conjugation and, excepting the verbs in *io-ere*, the Present-stem,) has been placed first among the principal parts; the verbs are accompanied, throughout the list, by short examples, illustrative of their construction.

The remarks on **pronunciation** are intended to give a fairly correct idea of and to aid in acquiring that pronunciation of Latin which was in use at the time of the classical Latin authors. (As this pronunciation alone can be an unchangeable standard of pronouncing Latin, it should, for the great advantage of uniformity, be adopted by all.)

Almost everything printed in smaller type, or as notes, may be reserved for a second perusal of the book.

"Hidden quantity" questioned by scholars, as e. g. in most cases of vowels before *gn* and *gm*, has not been marked.

May, 1906.

Part I : PHONOLOGY

1. CHARACTERS

The Latin language contains the following characters:

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.
a b c d e f g h i k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

It does not contain : j, w.

Capitals are used only:

1. for the first letter of a sentence;
2. for the first letter of a Proper Name: Graecia;
3. for the first letter of adjectives and adverbs derived from Proper Names: linguā Graecā, Graecē loquī.

2. SOUNDS

Cōnsonantēs	Labi- ālēs	Guttu- rālēs	Den- tālēs	Lin- guālēs	Palā tālīs.
Mūtae tenuēs (hard)	p	c, k, q	t		
“ mediae (soft)	b	g	d		
“ aspirātae (fol- lowed by h)	ph	ch	th		
Sēmivocālēs liquidāe				l, r	
“ nāsālēs	m	ng	n		
“ spīrantēs	f, v	(h)	s, z		i = j
Vocālēs	a, e, i, o, u, y				
Cōnsonāns duplex	x = (cs, or gs.)				
Diphthongi: vocālēs duplicēs	ae, oe, au, eu.				

3. APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION

The following list contains the main points of that pronunciation of Latin which was in use at the time of the classical Latin authors.

ā	a	as in father, fatigue
ē	e	as in obey, bet : see note 1.
ī	i	as in fatigue, fit
ō	o	as in holy, obey : see note 1.
ū	u	as in rude, put
y		like German ü : see note 2.
ae	oe	} pronounce both elements of these diphthongs in the same breath-impulse : see notes 3 and 4.
au	eu	
b, d, f, l, m, n, p, q,		} as in English
c and k		as in cat, kin
g		as in get
h		a sign of aspiration, no letter : see note 6.
r		trilled with the tip of the tongue
s		as in see
t		as in tit
z		like a lisped soft s.
consonant i		like y in yet : see notes 10 and 11.
consonant v		like w in win : see note 12.
bs	bt	like ps, pt
x (=cs, gs)		as in extra; not soft as in exact
nc, nq; ng		like nk and ng in rank, rang
n before s		is not pronounced, but lengthens and nasalizes the preceding vowel: cōsul, cēsor are pronounced cōsul, cēsor
qu	ngu	as is quick, sanguine
su		like sw; (in suādeō, -suēscō, suāvis)

4. Notes.

1. The Latin vowels and diphthongs are pure, without the vanishing sound of some English vowels.
2. The vowel *y* occurs in foreign words only : *syllaba*, syllable.
3. The *e*-element in *ae* and *oe* seems to have been more pronounced at the time of Cicero than the preceding *a* and *o*; the diphthongal pronunciation of *ae* and *oe* was gradually becoming monophthongal, the *a*- and *o*-sounds disappearing.
4. The diphthong *eu* is found in foreign words and in some interjections : *Eurōpa*, Europe; *heu*, alas.
eu in *neuter*, neither of the two, and in *neutiquam*, by no means, is no diphthong : *né-u-ter*, *ne-ú-ti-quam*.
5. The sign of diaeresis (¨) distinguishes *äe* and *öe* as two separate vowels each from the diphthongs *ae* and *oe*.
äer, air; *aes*, brass; *poëta*, poet; *foedus*, league.
6. The Latin *h*, generally, was not an independent sound or letter, as our *h*; it was a sign of aspiration (*nota aspiratiōnis*), intended to denote that the vowel following it should be uttered with a stronger aspiration than other vowels, or that *c*, *p*, *t* in *ch*, *ph*, *th* should be aspirated (followed by or joined with a breath-element). By careful speakers, especially on the stage, this *h* was, indeed, expressed; sometimes, even as an independent sound; as a rule, however, it was neglected; hence the variation in spelling:
 harēna or *arēna*; have or ave.
In some words it was a mere sign of diaeresis:
 ahēnus or *aēnus*.
7. Doubled consonants must be distinctly separated.
 annus = *an-nus*, year; *anus* = *a-nus*, old woman.
8. *K* is rare : *Kalendae*, *Kaeso*, *Karthägō* = *Carthägō*.
9. *Z* occurs in foreign words only : *Zama*, *Zephyrus*.
10. *I* is both a vowel and a consonant; it is a consonant,
 a) when it stands at the beginning of a word before a vowel: *iūs*; *b*) between two vowels: *māior*, *iēiūnus*.
 In Greek words *i* always is a vowel: *Iōnēs* = *I-ō-nēs*.
11. Instead of *ii* only one *i* is written :
 a) in the compounds of *iaciō* :
 e. g. write *abicio*, but pronounce *abyikiō*.
 b) in the declension of words in *āius*, *ēius*, *ōius* :
 e. g. write *Grāi*, *Grāis*, *Vēi*, *Bōi*, but pronounce *Grayi*.....
12. Also *v* denoted both a vowel and a consonant; now, when a vowel, it is usually written *u*.

5.

SYLLABLES

A word has as many syllables as it contains vowels and diphthongs:

ae-ris, 2 syllables; ā-ē-rīs, 3 syllables

6. Separation of syllables in writing:

a. Of consonants occurring between two vowels the following go with the second:

1. Single consonants : su-pe-rī, pē-ius, dī-vi-dō

2. gu, qu : san-guis, se-quer

3. Combinations of p, c, t, (b, g, d) with l, r:

qua-dru-plus, a-la-cris; but: Al-pēs, ar-gu-ō

4. The second of doubled consonants : an-nus, sic-cus

b. Other combinations of consonants may be separated as follows:

cas-tra or ca-stra; mōns-trum or mōn-strum

sānc-tus or sān-ctus; rēx-ī or rē-xī

c. Compound words usually divide into their parts:

ab-rogo; post-ea; prōd-est; ex-trahō

d. In ordinary speech, however, we separate:

ab-rogo; pos-teā; prō-dest; ex-trahō

7. Quantity of syllables:

a. The quantity of syllables is the relative time taken in sounding them, a long syllable requiring about twice the time of a short one.

b. A long syllable may be long by nature or by position; it is long by nature, if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel:

foe-dus, fī-dus.

Note: Long vowels are usually marked: ā, ē, ī, ō, ū;

short vowels are not marked: a, e, i, o, u.

A syllable is long by position, if its vowel is followed, in the same word, by two consonants, except p, c, t, (b, g, d) or l, r; qu being considered as a simple consonant: thus in the words an-nus, dux: x=cs, cōn-co-quō, the syllables an, dux, cōn are long by position.

Note: Vowels before nf, ns, nx, nct are long (by nature), vowels before nt, nd are short:

infāns, sānxī, sānctus; but infāntis, laudandus.

8.

ACCENT

- a. In words of two syllables the accent is on the first:
 infāns, éō, séquor.
- b. In words of more than two syllables, the accent is on the
 paenultima (next to the last), if that is long:
 infāntis, collaúdās;
 on the antepaenultima (second from the last), if
 the paenultima is short:
 sūperī, quádruplus, mediocris.

Note: Words with appended *que*, *ve*, *ne*, as well as Greek
 words follow the same rules:

útraque, tríave, tíbine;
 Iónes, Eúmenes, philosóphia, Academía.

c. *Exceptions:*

1. Compounds of *facio* which keep the *a* of *facio*, retain
 also the accent on *facio*: *benefácis*, *calefácit*; but:
réfícis.
2. Words which have lost a final vowel after a long
 penult, keep the accent in its former place:
ēdúc, *illíc* from *ēdūce*, *illice*.
3. Genitives and forms of address of substantives in *ius*
 and *ium*: *Vergílī*, *ingénī*.

Part II: INFLECTION

9.

Nouns: {substantives, adjectives, } are inflected by declension
 {numerals, pronouns }

Verbs: are inflected by conjugation.

Particles: {adverbs, prepositions, } are not inflected.
 {conjunctions, interjections }

10. DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Declension is that inflection which indicates gender, number and case.

11. GENDERS

The genders of nouns are determined by general and particular rules.

The particular rules (stated in the single declensions) are applied only, when the general rules cannot decide the gender.

12. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

1. **Men and rivers** are masculine (**m.**): masculīna.
2. **Women and trees** are feminine (**f.**): fēminīna.
3. **Indeclinables** are neuter (**n.**): néutra.
4. Nouns denoting **either sex** are common (**c.**): commūnia.

Genus masculīnum;
 genus fēminīnum;

genus neutrum: neither m. nor f.
 genus commūne: either m. or f.

Examples.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Nauta, ae, m., sailor | Persa, ae, m., Persian |
| Tiberis, is, m., the Tiber | Albis, is, m., the Elbe |
| 2. pōpulus, ī, f., poplar | īlex, icis, f., holmoak |
| quercus, ūs, f, oak | soror, ōris, f., sister. |
| 3. fās, n., divine right | valē, n., farewell |
| Also phrases, clauses, quotations etc., are neuter. | |
| 4. parēns, entis, c. (i. e., m. and f.) father or mother | |
| infāns, antis, c., child (boy or girl) | |
| comes, itis, c., companion (male or female) | |

13. Note. Some names of men and animals have a masculine and a feminine ending (*substantīva mōbilia*):

fīlius, ī, m., son	fīlia, ae, f., daughter
nepōs, ōtis, m., grandson	neptis, is, f., granddaughter
puer, ī, m., boy	puella, ae, f., girl
victor, ōris, m., conqueror	victrix, icis, f., conqueror
rēx, rēgis, m., king	rēgīna, ae, f., queen
gallus, ī, m., cock	gallīna, ae, f., hen

14. Exceptions:

to 1: *a*; *Collective nouns* follow the particular rules of gender (11.):

cōpiaē, ārum, f., troops auxilia, ōrum, n., auxiliaries
 operae, ārum, f., workmen manus, ūs, f., troop

b. mancipium, ī, n., slave, (chattel)

c. Elaver, eris, n., Allier (river in Gaul); Allia, ae, f., Allia (river near Rome)

Sēquana, ae, m., Seine

Note: Names of rivers in *a* are of variable and uncertain gender.

to 2: acer, aceris, n., maple-tree.

15. NUMBERS

There are two numbers in the Latin declension:

Numerus singulāris, the Singular,

Numerus plūrālis, the Plural.

16.

CASES

Case is that form or use of a noun by which its relation to other words in a sentence is denoted.

There are five cases:

- Nōminātīvus**, answering the question: Who? or what?
Accūsātīvus, answering the question: Whom? or what?
Genetīvus, answering the question: Whose? or of what?
Datīvus, answering the question: To or for whom or what?
Ablātīvus, answering the question: By what means?

Note: The nominative is called *cāsus rēctus*, independent case; the other cases are called *cāsus oblīquī*, dependent cases.

17.

FORM OF ADDRESS

When used to name a person or thing addressed, the noun is in no case, as the address has no relation to any part of a sentence (16); a special form of address, (usually called the Vocative,) is used only for the singular of words in us of the second declension; the nominative serves that purpose for all other words.

18.

TABLE OF DECLENSIONS

Declension	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom. sing.:	mēnsa	servus	lex	fructus	dīēs
Gen. sing.:	mēnsae	servī	lēgis	fructūs	dīēi
Stem:	mēns	serv	lēg	fruct	dī
Ending }					
of Gen. sing. }	ae	ī	is	ūs	eī or ēī

Note: The ending of the Gen. sg. shows to which declension a word belongs.

19. The stem of a noun (substantive or adjective) is found by cutting off the ending of the Gen. sg.

26.

GENDER. (11.14.)

Names of men and rivers are masculine,
All other words in a are feminine.

Perfuga, ae, m., deserter; rēgīna, ae, f., queen
Mosa, ae, m., Maas (Meuse); terra, ae, f., earth, land.

27.

SECOND DECLENSION

Nomin. sing. -us, -er, -ir; -um.				
Gen. sing. -ī.				
Singular			Plural	
Nom.	serv-us	the (a) slave	serv-ī	(the) slaves
Acc.	serv-um	the (a) slave	serv-ōs	(the) slaves
Gen.	serv-ī	of the (a) slave	serv-ōrum	of (the) slaves
Dat.	serv-ō	to, for the (a) slave	serv-īs	to, for (the) slaves
Abl.	ā serv-ō	by the (a) slave	ā serv-is	by (the) slaves
Nom.	bell-um	the (a) war	bell-a	(the) wars
Acc.	bell-um	the (a) war	bell-a	(the) wars
Gen.	bell-ī	of the (a) war	bell-ōrum	of (the) wars
Dat.	bell-ō	to, for the (a) war	bell-īs	to, for (the) wars
Abl.	bell-ō	by means of the (a) war	bell-īs	by... (the) wars
Nom.	liber	the (a) book	libr-ī	(the) books
Acc.	libr-um	the (a) book	libr-ōs	(the) books
Gen.	libr-ī	of the (a) book	libr-ōrum	of (the) books
Dat.	libr-ō	to, for the (a) book	libr-īs	to, for (the) books
Abl.	libr-ō	by means of the (a) book	libr-īs	by... (the) books
Nom.	puer	the (a) boy	puer-ī	(the) boys
Acc.	puer-um	the (a) boy	puer-ōs	(the) boys
Gen.	puer-ī	of the (a) boy	puer-ōrum	of (the) boys
Dat.	puer-ō	to, for the (a) boy	puer-īs	to, for (the) boys
Abl.	ā puer-ō	by the (a) boy	ā puer-is	by (the) boys

28. There is only one noun in -ir, **vir**, virī, m., *man*:

Sing.: vir, virum, virī, virō, virō

Plur.: virī, virōs, virōrum, virīs, virīs

29. **Like puer** are declined:

1. Substantives in -fer and -ger, as
signifer, -ferī, m., *standard-bearer*; armiger, gerī, m.,
armor-bearer;
2. gener, erī, m., *son-in-law*; vesper, erī, m., *evening*
socer, erī, m., *father-in-law*; Liber, erī, m., *god of wine*
liberī, erōrum, m., *children*.

Like liber, book:

all other substantives of the 2d decl. ending in er, as
ager, agrī, m., *field*; magister, trī, m., *teacher, master*.

30. ADJECTIVES OF THE I. AND II. DECLENSIONS

1. Adjectives in **-us, m., -a, f., -um, n.** } are declined like
as bonus, bona, bonum, *good* } **servus**, mēnsa, bellum
2. Adjectives in **-er, m., -a, f., -um, n.** } like
as sacer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred* } **liber**, mēnsa, bellum;
3. Adj. in **-er, m., -era, f., -erum, n.** } like
as asper, aspera, asperum, *rough* } **puer**, mēnsa, bellum;

Like asper: a. miser, misera, miserum, *wretched*
tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender, soft*
liber, libera, liberum, *free, independent*

- b. Adjectives in **-fer** and **-ger**, as
frūgifer, frūgifera, frūgiferum, *fruitful*
corniger, cornigera, cornigerum, *horned*

4. Dexter, dextra or dextera, dextrum or dexterum, *on the right side*
5. Satur, satura, saturum, *satiated*, is decl. like **vir**, mēnsa, bellum.

Remember: E is kept by

liber, *free*, and liberī, the *children*,
Liber, *Bacchus*; -fer and -ger;
alter, asper, miser, tener,
puer, vesper, socer, gener.

31.

AGREEMENT

The adjectives (both predicative and attributive) must agree with their substantives in **gender, number and case**:

mēnsa mea, *my table* hortus tuus, *your garden*
 poēta clārus *a famous poet* populus liber, *a free people*
 puer aeger, *a sick boy* aedificium sacrum, *a sacred bldg.*

Singular			Plural	
Nom.	mēns-a	me-a	mēns-ae	me-āe
Acc.	mēns-am	me-am	mens-ās	me-ās
Gen.	mēns-ae	me-ae	mēns-ārum	me-ārum
Dat.	mēns-ae	me-ae	mēns-īs	mē-īs
Abl.	mēns-ā	me-ā	mēns-īs	mē-īs
Nom.	poēt-a	clār-us	poēt-ae	clār-ī
Acc.	poēt-am	clār-um	poēt-ās	clār-ōs
Gen.	poēt-ae	clār-ī	poēt-ārum	clār-ōrum
Dat.	poēt-ae	clār-ō	poēt-īs	clār-īs
Abl.	ā poēt-ā	clār-ō	ā poēt-īs	clār-īs

32.

FORM OF ADDRESS (17)

The form of address in the singular **differs** from the nomin. sg. in many cases:

- a. **Substantives in us** have **-e**: servus, serve, *O slave!*
 Darēus, Darēe, *O Darius!*
 but filius, fili, *O son!*

Proper nouns in ius, ēius, āius, have: ī, ēī, āī, as
 Vergilius, Vergilī, *O Virgil!*
 Pompēius, Pompēī, *O Pompey!*
 Gāius, Gāī, *O Gaius!*

- b. **Adjectives in us** have **-e**: bonus, bon-e
 " in ius " **-ie**: impius, impi-e
 meus, mea, meum, has: mī, mea, meum

mi fili, *O my son!* poēta impie, *O ungodly poet!*
 mea filia, *O my daughter!* serve piger, *O lazy slave!*

The **gen. sg.** of **proper** (and common) nouns in **-ius**, and **-ium** is often **ī**, instead of **iī**:

Vergīlī = Vergiliī; ingenium, ingēnī = ingeniī, *talents*.

33. Declension of deus, deī, m., god:

Sing.: deus, deum, deī, deō, ā deō,

Plur.: dī (diī), deōs, deōrum, dīs (diīs) ā dīs (diīs).

Form of address: sg. (not used), pl. dī.

Note: The form of address in Christian writers is *Deus*.

Dī and diīs are pronounced like dī, dīs.

34. GENDER (11, 12.)

Words in **-um** are **néutra**.

-us, -er: masculīna.

Exceptions:

Feminine are **islands, lands** and **towns** in **us**
and **humus**;

Neuter **vīrus, vulgus**.

Corinthus clāra, *famous Corinth*; vīrus mortiferum,
deadly poison; pōpulī altae, *high poplars* (12).

mālus, ī, m., *mast*; upright beam mālus, ī, f., *apple-tree*

populus, ī, m., *people*

pōpulus, ī, f., *poplar*

Aegyptius, ī, m., *Egyptian*

Aegyptus, ī, f., *Egypt*

Poloponnēsus, ī, f., *Peloponnesus*

Cyprus, ī, f., *Cyprus*

Corinthus, ī, f., *Corinth*

humus, ī, f., *ground, soil*

mālum, ī, n., *apple*

malum, ī, n., *evil, misfortune*

vīrus, ī, n., *poison*

vulgus, ī, n., *crowd, rabble*.

vīrus and vulgus form no plural.

35. Note: 1) **Masculine** stay Pontus, Hellēspontus, Isthmus.

2) The gender of islands, lands and towns **not** ending in **us** is determined by their ending (in all declensions):

Saguntum, ī, n., *Sagunt* Leuctra, ōrum, n., *Leuctra*.

Delphī, ōrum., m., *Delphi*.

THIRD DECLENSION (18)

- 36.** A word is **parisyllabic**, if the number of its syllables in the nom. and the gen. sg. is **equal** : pā r;
but **imparisyllabic**, if the number is **unequal** : impār:

IMPARISYLLABA:

- a) rēx, rēgis, *king* : the stem rēg ends in one consonant : g.
(19.)
b) ars, artis, *art* : the stem art ends in two consonants : rt.

PARISYLLABA:

- c) nūbēs, nūbis, *cloud* : the stem nūb ends in one consonant : b.
d) linter, lintris, *skiff* : the stem lintr ends in three consonants : ntr.

Masculīna et Fēminīna:				
	Imparisyllaba with stems ending in one consonant have: Abl.sg. Acc.pl. Gen.pl. e ēs um		All other masc. and fem., (see above: b, c, d,) have: Abl.sg. Acc.pl. Gen.pl. e ēs or is ium	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	rēx, <i>king</i>	rēg-ēs	ars, <i>art</i>	art-ēs
Acc.	rēg-em	rēg-ēs	art-em	art-ēs or art-īs
Gen.	rēg-is	rēg-um	art-is	art-ium
Dat.	rēg-ī	rēg-ibus	art-ī	art-ibus
Abl.	ā rēg-e	ā rēg-ibus	art-e	art-ibus
Néutra				
	Neuters ending in e, al, ar (with gen. āris) and pār (with gen. paris): ī ia ium		All other neuters have: e a um	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	mar-e, <i>sea</i>	mar-ia	nōmen <i>name</i>	nomin-a
Acc.	mar-e	mar-ia	nōmen	nōmin-a
Gen.	mar-is	mar-ium	nōmin-is	nōmin-um
Dat.	mar-ī	mar-ibus	nōmin-ī	nōmin-ibus
Abl.	mar-ī	mar-ibus	nōmin-e	nōmin-ibus

37.

IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS

1. Acc. sg. -im; Abl. sg. ī:
Sitis, puppis, turris,
Febris and secūris,
Cum parisyllabīs
Of streams and towns in is.

2. Abl. sg. -e instead of -ī:
Neuter names of **towns** in e,
As Bibracte and Praeneste.

Note 1: Abl. sg. -ī and -e.
Cīvis, ignis, also nāvis,
Imber and supellex, clāvis.

Note 3: Abl. sg. of rēte is rēte.

3. Gen. pl. -ium
instead of -um:
Faucēs, līs and optimātēs;
Then Quīrītēs and penātes,
With Samnītēs, Arpīnātēs.

4. Gen. pl. -um
instead of -ium:
Senex, pater, also māter;
Canis, iuvenis and frāter.

Note 2: Gen. pl. -um (and -ium)
Mēnsis, cīvītās, parentēs;
Sēdēs, fraus and also vātēs.

Note 4:
Os, ossis, n., bone, has
ossium,
Cor, cordis, n., heart, has
cordium.

sitis, is, im, ī; f., *thirst*
puppis, is, im, ī; f., *stern*
turris, is, im, ī; f., *tower*
febris, is, im, ī; f., *fever*
secūris, is, im, ī; f., *axe*
Tiberis, is, im, ī; m., *Tiber*
Neāpolis, is, im, ī; f., *Naples*
Elis, idis, **em**, e, f., *Elis*.

cīvis, is; c., *citizen*
ignis, is; m., *fire*
nāvis, is; f., *ship*
imber, **bris**; m., *heavy*
rain

supellex, **supellec-**
tilis, f., (plur. not
used), *furni-*
ture

clāvis, is; f., *key*
rēte, is; n., *net*

faucēs, (pl.) ium, f., *throat*
līs, lītis, ium, f., *strife*

optimātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *aristocrats*
Quīrītēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Quirites*
penātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *household*
gods

Samnītēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Samnites*
Arpīnātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Arpinates*

senex, **senis**, m., *old man*
pater, patris, m., *father*
māter, mātris, f., *mother*
canis, is; c., *dog*
iuvenis, is; m., *(young)*
man
frāter, frātris, m., *brother*

mēnsis, is; m., *month*
cīvītās, ātis, f., *state; citi-*
zenship

parentēs, um; m., *parents*
sēdēs, is; f., *seat*
fraus, **fraudis**, f., *deceit*
vātēs, is; m., *seer; bard*

38.

RULES OF GENDER

(*Vocabulary : 41 sqq.*)

I. MASCULINE are -ō, -or, -er, sōl, sāl.

Exceptions

Feminine are carō, -iō, -dō,
 Arbor, árboris and linter, -go.

Masculine stay pugiō,
 Ordō and septentriō.

Neuter fruits and plants in -er,
 Aequor, marmor, cor and ver,
 Iter, verber(a), cadāver.

II. FEMININE are æ and -x.

Exceptions

Masculine is pēs,
 As and pariēs;
 Dēns and fōns and mōns,
 Lepus, mūs and pōns;
 Collis, orbis, ēnsis,
 Pulvis, lapis, mēnsis;
 Words in -nis, -guis, -cis,
 And in -ex, (icis);
 Grex and words in ōs.—

Feminine: cōs, dōs;

Neuter: aes, vās, ōs,
 -us (with ris) and os.

III. NEUTER are

-e, -al, -ar;
 -ma, -men, caput, fel,
 -ur and lāc and mel.

Masculine stays vultur.

39. Note: Many other words are *masculine* :

1. cardō, inis, <i>hinge</i>	canālis, is, (water) <i>pipe</i> ,
harpagō, ōnis, <i>grappling</i>	<i>canal</i>
	hook
papiliō, ōnis, <i>butterfly</i>	caulis, is, <i>cabbage</i>
scīpiō, ōnis, <i>staff</i>	fustis, is, <i>cudgel</i>
vespertiliō, ōnis, <i>bat</i>	postis, is, <i>post</i>
	vermis, is, <i>worm</i>
2. ariēs, etis, <i>ram</i>	
quadrupēs, edis, <i>quadruped</i>	4. Names of fractions of 12,
caespes, itis, <i>turf, sod</i>	ending in s or x, as:
gurgēs, itis, <i>whirlpool</i>	sextāns, antis, <i>two-twelfths</i>
stīpes, itis, <i>stock, post</i>	quīncūnx, uncis, <i>five</i> “
glīs, gliris, <i>dormouse</i>	sēmīs, sēmissis, <i>six</i> “
rudēns, entis, <i>rope</i>	bēs, bēssis, <i>eight</i> “
calix, icis, <i>cup</i>	
fornix, icis, <i>arch, vault</i>	5. Words in n (not men) as:
3. axis, is, <i>axle</i>	pecten, inis, <i>comb</i>
callis, is, <i>path</i>	rēnēs, um, <i>kidneys</i>

GENDER OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES**40.**

continēns, entis, f., (= continēns terra)	, <i>continent, main-</i>
occidēns, entis, m., (usu. occidens sōl)	, <i>West</i> [land]
oriēns, entis, m., (usu. oriēns sōl)	, <i>East</i>
torrēns, entis, m., (= fluvius torrēns)	, <i>torrent</i>
annālis, is, m., (= liber annālis)	, <i>usu. pl. : annals</i>
Aprīlis, is, m., (usu. mēnsis Aprīlis)	, <i>April</i>
September, bris, m., (usu. mēnsis September)	, <i>September</i>
	(Declension : 51, 52.)

41.**VOCABULARY TO RULES OF GENDER**

(See also 37, 39. 40)

RULE FOR MASCULINES

aquilō, ōnis, m., <i>northwind</i>	pāvō, ōnis, m., <i>peacock</i>
carbō, ōnis, m., <i>coal</i>	pulmō, ōnis, m., <i>lung</i>
leō, ōnis, m., <i>lion</i>	sermō, ōnis, m., <i>conversation</i>
mucrō, ōnis, m., <i>point of a</i>	Sulmō, ōnis, m., <i>Sulmo</i> (35.)
<i>sword</i>	

turbō,	inis, m., <i>whirlwind</i>	testūdō,	inis, f., <i>tortoise,</i> <i>shelter</i>
pugiō,	ōnis, m., <i>dagger</i>		
ōrdō,	inis, m., <i>order, series</i>	arbor, árbōris, f., <i>tree</i>	
Septentriōnēs, um, m., <i>North</i>		soror,	ōris, f., <i>sister</i>
Vesontiō,	ōnis, m., (exc. to 35)	linter,	tris, f., <i>skiff</i>
		mulier,	íeris, f., <i>woman</i>
amor,	ōris, m., <i>love</i>	imāgō,	inis, f., <i>picture</i>
color,	ōris, m., <i>color</i>	orīgō,	inis, f., <i>origin</i>
dolor,	ōris, m., <i>pain</i>		
agger,	eris, m., <i>mound,</i> <i>dam</i>	acer,	áceris, n., <i>maple-tree</i> (38)
		papāver,	eris, n., <i>poppy</i>
sōl,	sōlis, m., <i>sun</i>	piper,	eris, n., <i>pepper</i>
sāl,	salis, m., <i>salt</i>	aequor,	oris, n., <i>smooth sea</i>
		marmor,	oris, n., <i>marble</i>
carō,	carnis , f., <i>flesh</i>	cor,	cordis , n., <i>heart</i> (<i>cor-</i> <i>dium</i>)
mūnitiō,	ōnis, f., <i>intrench-</i> <i>ment</i>	vēr,	veris, n., <i>spring</i>
ratio,	ōnis, f., <i>reason,</i> <i>plan...</i>	iter, itineris , n., <i>march,</i> <i>road</i>	
cōnsuetūdō,	inis, f., <i>custom</i>	verbera,	um, n., <i>lashing</i>
		cadāver,	eris, n., <i>corpse</i>
	ōrdō plēbēius		<i>class of the common people</i>
	sermō patrius		<i>mothertongue</i>
	carō ferīna		<i>game</i>
	arbor prōcēra		<i>tall tree</i>
	cadāver cruentum		<i>bloody corpse</i>
	cor hūmānum		<i>human heart</i>

42.

RULE FOR FEMININES

amas,	atis, f., <i>duck</i>	mercēs,	ēdis, f., <i>reward, pay</i>
aetās,	ātis, f., <i>age</i>	quiēs,	ētis, f., <i>rest</i>
aestās,	ātis, f., <i>summer</i>	nūbēs,	is, f., <i>cloud</i>
crūdēlitās,	ātis, f., <i>cruelty</i>	vulpēs,	is, f., <i>fox</i>
gravitās,	ātis, f., <i>heaviness</i>		
levitās,	ātis, f., <i>fickleness,</i> <i>frivolity</i>	auris,	is, f., <i>ear</i>
		avis,	is, f., <i>bird</i>
abiēs,	etis, f., <i>fir</i> (12)	classis,	is, f., <i>fleet, class</i>
seges,	etis, f., <i>crop</i>	fēlis,	is, f., <i>cat</i>
compedēs,	um, f., <i>shackles</i>	vītis,	is, f., <i>vine</i>

cōs,	cōtis, f.,	<i>hone</i>	gēns,	gentis, f.,	<i>race, nation</i>
dōs,	dōtis, f.,	<i>dowry</i>	mēns,	mentis, f.,	<i>mind</i>
laus,	laudis, f.,	<i>praise</i>	frōns,	frontis, f.,	<i>forehead</i>
iuventūs,	ūtis, f.,	<i>youth,</i>	frōns,	frondis, f.,	<i>foliage</i>
		<i>young men</i>	pars,	partis, f.,	<i>part</i>
salūs,	ūtis, f.,	<i>welfare</i>	urbs,	urbis, f.,	<i>city</i>
senectūs,	ūtis, f.,	<i>old age</i>			
servitus,	ūtis, f.,	<i>slavery</i>	pāx,	pācis, f.,	<i>peace</i>
virtūs,	ūtis, f.,	<i>manly excel-</i>	lēx,	lēgis, f.,	<i>law</i>
		<i>lence, brav-</i>	nex	necis, f.,	<i>murder</i>
		<i>ery, etc.</i>	nix,	nivis, f.,	<i>snow</i>
palūs,	ūdis, f.,	<i>swamp</i>	nox,	noctis, f.,	<i>night</i>
pecus,	udis, f.,	<i>single head</i>	lūx,	lūcis, f.,	<i>(day) light</i>
		<i>of cattle; sheep</i>			
		<i>dux callidus, a</i>			<i>experienced leader (12)</i>
		<i>nāvis longa</i>			<i>man-of-war</i>
		<i>virtūs summa</i>			<i>perfect manhood</i>
		<i>vōx magna</i>			<i>loud voice</i>
43.					
pēs,	pedis, m.,	<i>foot</i>	cinis,	cineris, m.,	<i>ashes</i>
as,	assis, m.,	<i>1. unit of</i>			<i>(of a corpse)</i>
		<i>money</i>	crīnis,	is, m.,	<i>hair</i>
		<i>2. unit of</i>	fīnis,	is, m.,	<i>boundary</i>
		<i>weight</i>	pānis,	is, m.,	<i>bread</i>
vas,	vadis, m.,	<i>bail</i>	anguis,	is, m.,	<i>serpent</i>
pariēs,	etis, m.,	<i>wall</i>	unguis,	is, m.,	<i>nail</i>
dēns,	dentis, m.,	<i>tooth</i>			<i>of a finger</i>
fōns,	fontis, m.,	<i>fountain,</i>			
		<i>spring</i>	piscis,	is, m.,	<i>fish</i>
mōns,	montis, m.,	<i>mountain</i>	hostis,	is, m.,	<i>enemy (in</i>
lepus,	oris, m.,	<i>hare</i>			<i>war)</i>
mūs,	ūris, m.,	<i>mouse</i>	codex,	icis, m.,	<i>book, ledger</i>
pōns,	pontis, m.,	<i>bridge</i>	cortex,	icis, m.,	<i>bark</i>
collis,	is, m.,	<i>hill</i>	vertex,	icis, m.,	<i>top; whirl</i>
orbis,	is, m.,	<i>circle</i>	grex,	gregis, m.,	<i>flock</i>
ēnsis,	is, m.,	<i>sword (poet.)</i>	flōs,	flōris, m.,	<i>flower</i>
pulvis,	veris, m.,	<i>dust</i>	mōs,	mōris, m.,	<i>manner</i>
lapis,	pidis, m.,	<i>stone</i>	rōs,	rōris, m.,	<i>dew</i>
		<i>pānis cibārius</i>			<i>coarse bread</i>
		<i>collis arduus</i>			<i>steep hill</i>

44.

fās, <i>indecl.</i> , n., <i>divine right</i> (12)	rūs, rūris, n., <i>country</i> (<i>opp. to city</i> , <i>pl. has n. and</i> <i>acc. only.</i>)
nefās, <i>indecl.</i> , n., <i>wrong, sin</i>	
vās, vāsis, n., <i>vessel</i> (67) <i>implement</i>	
aes, aeris, n., <i>bronze</i> , <i>copper-money</i>	tūs, tūris, n., <i>frank-incense</i>
ōs, ōris, n., <i>mouth, face</i>	genus, eris, n., <i>descent; race</i>
os, ossis, n., <i>bone</i> (<i>ossium</i>)	latus, eris, n., <i>side, flank</i>
crūs crūris, n., <i>leg</i>	vulnus, eris, n., <i>wound</i>
iūs, iūris, n., <i>right; justice</i>	corpus, oris, n., <i>body</i>
	pecus, oris, n., <i>herd of small</i> <i>cattle</i>
	tempus, oris, n., <i>time</i>

aes aliē num

debt

ōra dūra

brazen faces

rūs suburbānum

country-seat

45.

RULE FOR NEUTERS

conclāve, is, n., <i>room; cage</i>	fulmen, inis, n., <i>striking</i> <i>lightning</i>
hastile, is, n., <i>shaft of a spear</i>	
animal, ālis, n., <i>living being</i> ; <i>beast</i>	lūmen, inis, n., <i>light, lumin-</i> <i>ous object</i>
tribūnal, ālis, n., <i>tribunal</i>	caput, capitis , n., <i>head</i>
vectigal, ālis, n., <i>tax; rents</i>	fel, fellis , n., <i>gall</i>
calcar, āris, n., <i>spur</i>	fulgur, uris, n., <i>flashing</i> <i>lightning</i>
fār, farris, n., <i>spelt</i> (<i>farra</i>)	murmur, uris, n., <i>humming</i> ; <i>roaring</i>
pār, paris, n., <i>pair</i> (<i>paria</i>)	rōbur, oris, n., <i>oakwood</i> , <i>strength</i>
poēma, atis, n., <i>poem</i>	Tibur, uris, n., <i>City in</i> <i>Latium</i>
agmen, inis, n., <i>army</i> (<i>on the</i> <i>march</i>)	
certāmen, inis, n., <i>contest</i>	lāc, lactis , n., <i>milk</i>
flūmen, inis, n., <i>river</i>	mel, mellis , n., <i>honey</i>
	vultur, uris, m. , <i>vulture</i>

mare internum

Mediterranean Sea

animālia domestica

domestic animals

flūmina lāta

broad rivers

fulmen sinistrum

favorable lightning

capita cāna

gray heads

46. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(See Comparison of Adjectives, 73.)

FIRST CLASS

Adj. of 3 endings: ācer, ācris, ācre } Abl. sg., N. pl. n., Gen. pl.
 " " 2 endings: brevis, brevis, breve } ī, ia, ium.
 " " 1 ending: fēlix, fēlix, fēlix }

Singular								
	m.	f.	n.	m., f.	n.	m., f.	n.	
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	brevis	breve	fēlix		
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	brevem	breve	fēlicem	fēlix	
Gen.		ācris			brevis		fēlicis	
Dat.		ācrī			brevī		fēlicī	
Abl.		ācrī			brevī		fēlicī	
Plural								
	m., f.	n.	m., f.	n.	m., f.	n.		
Nom.	ācrēs	ācria	brevēs	brevia	fēlicēs	fēlicia		
Acc.	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria	brevēs (-īs)	brevia	fēlicēs (īs)	fēlicia		
Gen.		ācrium		brevium		fēlicium		
Dat.		ācribus		brevibus		fēlicibus		
Abl.		ācribus		brevibus		fēlicibus		

47. ADJECTIVES OF 3 ENDINGS

ācer, ācris, ācre,	<i>keen</i>	equester, equestris, equestre,	
ālacer, ālacris, ālacre	<i>lively</i>	<i>equestrian, cavalry-</i>	
céleber, célebris, célebre, ¹⁾	<i>much</i>	palūster, palūstris, palūstre,	
<i>frequented; 2) renowned</i>		<i>swampy</i>	
céler, céleris, célere	<i>swift</i>	pedester, pedestris, pedestre,	
salūber } -bris, -bre	<i>wholesome</i>	<i>foot-</i>	
salūbris }		September, Septembris,	
		Septembre, <i>of September</i>	
		vólucer } vólucris, vólucere { <i>fly-</i>	
			<i>ing</i>

(campester), campestris, campestre, *level*.

céleber, celer, pedester;

ālacer, ācer, equester.

48. ADJECTIVES OF 2 ENDINGS

brevis, breve, <i>short</i>	lūgubris, bre, <i>mourning</i>
dulcis, dulce, <i>sweet</i>	mediocris, cre, <i>middling</i>
fortis, forte, <i>strong, manly</i>	suavis, suave, <i>pleasant, sweet</i>
illūstris, illūstre, ¹⁾ <i>full of light</i>	silvestris, tre, <i>woody</i>
²⁾ <i>famous</i>	terrestris, tre, <i>land -</i>

49. ADJECTIVES OF 1 ENDING

anceps, ancipitis, <i>doubtful;</i> <i>two-sided</i>	fēlix, icis, <i>lucky, fortunate</i>
audāx, audācis, <i>bold</i>	iners, ertis, <i>unskilful; inactive</i>
clēmēns, entis, <i>forbearing</i>	locuplēs, ētis, <i>opulent</i>
ōrdō equester,	pār, paris, <i>equal</i>
orātor mediocris,	<i>order of knights</i>
lamentātiō lūgubris,	<i>an ordinary speaker</i>
mel dulce,	<i>mourning over the dead</i>
proelium anceps,	<i>sweet honey</i>
remedia celeria,	<i>a double battle</i>
	<i>efficacious remedies</i>

50. SECOND CLASS

The following adjectives of one ending belong to this class:

1. Princeps, compos, pauper, dives } Abl. sg., N. and Acc. nt. pl., Gen. pl.
Also particeps, superstes } e wanting, **um**
2. Memor, inops : ī wanting, **um**
3. Vetus, : vetere, vetera, veterum

Singular			Plural	
	m., f.	n.	m., f.	n.
Nom.	dīves	dīves	dīvītēs	—
Acc.	dīvitē	dīves	dīvītēs	—
Gen.	dīvitis		dīvītum	
Dat.	dīviti		dīvītibus	
Abl.	dīvite		dīvītibus	

princeps, cipis, <i>chief</i>	particeps, cipis, <i>sharing</i>
compos, potis, <i>master of</i>	superstes, stitis, <i>surviving</i>
pauper, peris, <i>not wealthy;</i> <i>of small income</i>	memor, oris, <i>mindful</i>
	inops, inopis, <i>without re-</i> <i>sources</i>
dīves, vitis, <i>rich</i>	vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>

51. Note 1: Adjectives in **is** and **er**, used as appellatives or as names of months are declined like adjectives: Abl. sg. **ī**:

aequālis, is, m., <i>contemporary</i>	cōsulāris, is, m., <i>ex-consul</i>
affīnis, is, c., <i>relation by marriage</i>	familiāris, is, c., <i>friend, intimate</i>
annālis, is, m., (usu. pl.), <i>annals</i>	nātālis, is, m., <i>birthday</i>
Athēniēnsis, is, m., <i>Athenian</i>	sodālis, is, m., <i>comrade</i>
Aprīlis, is, m., <i>April</i> (40)	Septēmbri-s, is, m., <i>September</i>

Abl.: aequālī, nātālī, Septēmbri.

Note 2: Adjectives used as **proper names** have **e** in the abl. sg.:

Martiālis, ā Martiāle;	Fēlix, cum Fēlice
Metellus Celer,	ā Metellō Celere

Note 3: Adjectives in **ās**, **ātis**, and **īs**, **ītis**, have **e**, when denoting persons; **ī**, when denoting things:

in Arpīnātī (fundō), *on the estate in Arpinum*;
ab Arpīnāte (homine), *by an inhabitant of Arpinum*.

52. DECLENSIONS OF PARTICIPLES IN NS

Abl. sg. $\begin{smallmatrix} e \\ i \end{smallmatrix}$; Nom. pl. neut. **ia**; Gen. pl. **ium**.

When used as adjectives, participles in ns have **ī** in the abl. sg.

“ “ “ participles or substantives, they have **e** in the abl. sg.

ā milite vigilantī,	<i>by a watchful soldier</i>
milite vigilante,	<i>while the soldier was watching;</i>
ā sapientī sene,	<i>by a discreet old man,</i>
ā sapiente,	<i>by a judicious person.</i>

53. FOURTH DECLENSION

fructus, ūs, m., fruit:			cornū, ūs, n., horn:	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	fruct-ūs	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
Acc.	fruct-um	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
Gen.	fruct-ūs	fruct-uum	corn-ūs	corn-uum
Dat.	fruct-uī, (ū)	fruct-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus
Abl.	fruct-ū	fruct-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus

54. **Ubus**, instead of *ibus*, is taken by
artus, ūs, joint, (pl.: limbs,) and *tribus, ūs, tribe:*
artubus, tribubus.

The same ending is occasionally found in other words, as in
lacus, ūs, lake; portus, ūs, harbor.
lacibus and lacubus.

Distinguish *arcibus* from *arcubus*:
arx, arcis, f., stronghold; arcus, ūs, m., bow.

55. **Domus**, *ūs, house*, has forms of both the 4th and 2d declensions:

Sing.: *domus, domum, domūs, domui domō*

Plur.: *domūs, domōs, domuum, domibus, domibus*

domī, at home (Locative)

domum, home, homeward

domō, from home.

56. **GENDER**

-us is masculine; *-u* is neuter.

Exceptions

Fēminīna are in **us**

Idūs, tribus, porticus;

Acus, domus, manus.

artus, ūs, m., joint, (pl. limbs)

exercitus, ūs, m., (disciplined)
army

fructus, ūs, m., fruit

quercus, ūs, f., oak (12)

anus, ūs, f., old woman

acus, ūs, f., needle

domus, ūs, f., house

idūs, uum, f., Ides (13th or
15th of the month)

cornū, ūs, n., horn

portus ceber,

vīsus ācer,

domus ampla,

tribus rūstica,

idūs Martiae,

genū sinistrum

lacus, ūs, m., lake

portus, ūs, m., harbor

sēnsus, ūs, m., feeling; tact

nurus, ūs, f., daughter-in-law

socrus, ūs, f., mother-in-law

manus, ūs, f., hand

porticus, ūs, f., collonade

tribus, ūs, f., tribe

genū, ūs, n., knee

much-frequented harbor

keen sight

spacious house

country-tribe

Ides of March

the left knee

57.

FIFTH DECLENSION

diēs, diēī, m., <i>day</i>			rēs, reī, f., <i>thing</i>	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	di-ēs	di-ēs	r-ēs	r-ēs
Acc.	di-em	di-ēs	r-em	r-ēs
Gen.	di-ēī	di-ērum	r-eī	r-ērum
Dat.	di-ēī	di-ēbus	r-eī	r-ēbus
Abl.	di-ē	di-ēbus	r-ē	r-ēbus

58. Fidēs, spēs, rēs have ēī: fīdeī, speī, reī;
the rest have ēī: perniciēī, speciēī, aciēī, faciēī etc.

Note: a. Only diēs and rēs form a *complete* plural.

Speciēs forms the nom. and acc. plural.

b. The other cases of the plural are supplied by synonyms:

Plur.: speciēs, speciēs, formārum, formīs, formīs.

59.

GENDER

ēs of the fifth is feminine.

Exceptions:

Masculine are diēs, day,

and meridiēs, midday;

Diēs, an appointed day,

Feminine does mostly stay.

aciēs, ēī, f., *keenness*, speciēs, ēī, f., *outward appearance*
battle-array

facies, ēī, f., *face*, fidēs, ēī, f., *trust*,
appearance *faithfulness*

perniciēs, ēī, f., *ruin, bane* spes, ēī, f., *hope*

diēs festus *feast-day*

diēs dicta, cōstitutā *appointed day*

NOMINA DEFECTIVA

60. Indēclinābīlia:

Indeclinable words (12;44)

māne, *morning*īnstār, *like; as much as* (gen.)frūgī, *honest*nēquam, *naughty*homō frūgī, *an honest man*

epistula volūminis īnstār.

61. Singulāria tantum occur in the singular only:

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge*
 aes aliċnum. n., *debt*
 indolēs, is, f., *native quality*
 vestis, is, f., *clothing*

rēgula, ae, f., *rule, pattern*
 iūs iurandum, n., *oath*
 specimen, inis, n., *sample, proof*
 (vestimenta, ōrum, n., *pieces of cloth*)

62. Plūrālia tantum occur in the plural only:

Athēnae, ārum, *Athens*
 angustiae, f., ¹⁾*defile*
²⁾*distress*

catēnae, f., *chain*
 dēliciae, f., *delight*
 dīvitiae, f., *riches*

arma, ōrum, n., *arms*
 castra, ōrum, n., *camp*
 Leuctra, ōrum, n., *Leuctra*

Syrācūsae, ārum, f., *Syracuse*
 inimīcitiae f., *enmity*
 īnsidiae, f., *ambush*
 minae, f., *threat*
 nūptiae, f., *wedding*
 tenebrae, f., *darkness*

hīberna, ōrum, n., *winter-camp*
 spolia, ōrum, n., *booty*
 Olympia, ōrum. n., *Olympic games*

Alpēs, ium, f., *the Alps*
 altāria, ium, n., *altar*
 cervicēs, um, f., *neck*
 fidēs, ium, f., *lyre*
 moenia, ium, n., *city wall*

nārēs, ium, f., *nose*
 sordēs, ium, f., ¹⁾*dirt*
²⁾*lowness of rank*
 māiōrēs, um, m., *ancestors*
 mārēs, ium, m., *shades of the dead*

63. Some Substantives form

a complete *Singular and Plural* in one meaning
 and a *Plural only* in another meaning:

Singular.	Plural:	Plūrālia tantum:
aqua, ae, f., <i>water</i>	aquae, <i>flood</i>	<i>medicinal springs</i>
cōpia, ae, f., <i>plenty</i>	cōpiae, <i>supplies</i>	<i>troops (14)</i>
littera, ae, f., <i>letter,</i> <i>a, b, c</i>	litterae, <i>letters</i>	<i>letter-epistle</i>
fortūna, ae, f., <i>fortune</i>	fortūnae, <i>good or ill haps</i>	<i>possessions</i>
opera, ae, f., <i>service,</i> <i>pains</i>	operae, <i>services</i>	<i>workmen (14)</i>
auxilium, ī, n., <i>help</i>	auxilia, <i>means of help</i>	<i>auxiliaries (14)</i>
comitium, ī, n., <i>place of assembly</i>	comitia, <i>places of assembly</i>	<i>assembly (ies)</i>
hortus, ī, m., <i>garden</i>	hortī, <i>gardens</i>	<i>park, parks</i>
impedimentum, ī, n., <i>hindrance</i>	impedimenta, <i>hindrances</i>	<i>baggage</i>
rōstrum, ī, n., <i>beak</i>	rōstra, <i>beaks</i>	<i>platform (s) for speakers</i>
aedēs, is, f., <i>temple</i>	aedēs, <i>temples</i>	<i>house (s)</i>
fīnis, is. m., <i>boundary</i>	fīnēs, <i>borders</i>	<i>territory (ies)</i>
pars, partis, f., <i>part</i>	partēs, <i>portions</i>	<i>party, parties, role, roles</i>

64. Other defective substantives

a. Sg.: { — diciōnem, ōnis, ōnī, ōne, f., *sway* } : no pl.
 { fors, — — — forte, f., *chance* }

b. Sg.: { — opem, opis, — ope, f., *help*
 { — — — — prece, f., *prayer; request*
 { vīs, vim, — — vī, f., *violence; power*

Pl. { opēs, opum, opibus, *riches; influence*
 { precēs, precum, precibus, *prayers*
 { vīrēs, vīrium, viribus, *forces; strength*

c. Some substantives form the abl. sg. only:

iussū imperātōris, *by command of the leader*

iniussū meō, *without my order*

meā, tuā, suā (refl.) } spon̄te, *of my, your, his, etc. free will*
 nostrā, vestrā }

grandis nātū, *advanced in age*

65. SUBSTANTIVA ABUNDANTIA

(Substantives abounding in forms)

I. a. luxuria = luxuriēs, luxuriam = luxuriem, f., *riotous living*
 māteria = māteriēs, māteriam = materiem, f., *building material*

b. The old gen. sg. in ās is sometimes used instead of ae:
 pater familiās or pater familiae, *head of the household*
 māter familiās or māter familiae, *mistress of the house*

c. The old dat. and abl. plur. -ābus, instead of īs, in the expressions:

dīs et deābus | *to the gods and goddesses*

filiīs et filiābus | *to the sons and daughters*

Note: When ambiguity is excluded, the dat. and abl. pl. are dīs, filiīs: ambābus dīs, filiīs.

66. II. a. The gen. pl. often has **um** instead of ōrum in words denoting money and measure, in the compounds of vir and in other words:

nummus, ī, m., *coin* sestertius, ī, m., *sesterce (silver-*
 modius, ī, m., *peck* *coin of about 5c)*

duumvir, ī, m., *one of the* triumvir, ī, m., } *one of the*
Board of two decemvir, ī, m., } *Board of 3, 10*

sestertium decem mīlia *ten thousand sesterces*

decemvirum potestas *the authority of the College of Ten*

praefectus fabrum *leader of workmen-troops*

liberum = liberōrum; deum = deōrum.

- b. **Sing.:** iūgerum, iūgerī, iūgerō, n., *acre*
Plur.: iūgera, iūgerum, iūgeribus, n., *acres*
- c. locus, ī, m., *place* pl.: locī, m., and loca, ōrum, n.
 locī, passages in books, grounds of proof
 locī aprīcī, **sunny spots** : *single places*
 loca haec, ea, illa, **regions** : *connected places*
- d. iocus, ī, m., *joke* pl.: iocī or ioca
- e. vesper, ī, m., *evening* {ad vesperum} *until evening*
 {ad vesperam}

67. III. a. plēbs, plēbis, f., *com-*

mon people= plēbēs, plēbeī or plēbī :

plēbī scītum, *decree of the people*

plēbī tribūnus, *defender of the people's cause*

b. requiēs, ētis, f., *rest*

requiētem = *requiem* requiēte = *requiē*

c. **Sing.:** vās, vāsis, vāsī, n., *vessel*

Plur.: vāsa, vāsōrum, vāsīs, n., *vessels; military baggage*

68.

PARTICULAR SUBSTANTIVES

bōs, bovis, c., *ox, cow* : bovēs, boum, bōbus-būbus

grūs, gruis, c., *crane* : gruēs, gruum, gruibus

sūs, suis c., *swine* : suēs, suum, suibus-sūbus

Aniō, Aniēnis, m., : tributary of the Tiber

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., (from Iov-pater), Juppiter

69.

DECLENSION OF GREEK WORDS

Pronunciation : Greek words are pronounced like Latin words, except that **i** always is vowel (4).

Accent : Greek words are accented according to the same laws as Latin words (8).

Gender : The gender of Greek words remains the same in Latin as it is in Greek.

Declension : Greek words usually take Latin forms :

bibliothēca, ae, f., *library* diphthōngus, ī, f., *diphthong*

grammatica, ae, f., *philology* periodus, ī, f., *a complete sentence*

poëta, ae, m., *poet* pelagus, ī, n., *sea*

GREEK FORMS

70.

FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. -ē, f.; -ās and -ēs, m.

Antigonē,	am,	ae,	ae,	ā,	f.,	<i>Antigone</i>
Aenēās,	am,	ae,	ae,	ā,	m.,	<i>Aeneas</i>
Spartiātēs,	am,	ae,	ae,	ā,	m.,	<i>the Spartan</i>
Spartiatae	ās,	ārum,	īs,	īs,	m.,	<i>the Spartans</i>

Note: Also other forms occur.

71.

SECOND DECLENSION

Nom. sg. -eus, m.; form of address -eu

Orpheus, eum, eī, eō, eō; m., *Orpheus*(The **eu** in the nom. and in the form of address is a diphthong.)

72.

THIRD DECLENSION

Nom. sg. -ēs, m.; -is, (parisyll.) f.; -ma, n.

a. Periclēs em=ēn, is=ī, ī, e, m., *Pericles*

Form of address: Pericles = Periclē

basis, **im**(-in), is, ī, ī, f., *pedestal*poēma, ma, matis, matī, mate, n., *poem*poēmata, mata, { **matorum** poematīs, n., *poems*
 { **matum**b. āēr, āēris, m., *air* : acc.: āēraaethēr, aetheris, m., *ether* : acc.: aethera

VOCABLES

Penelopē, ae, f., *Penelope* Persēs, ae, m., *Persian*Note: All **patronymics** in dēs have **ae**:Atridēs, ae, m., *scion of Atreus*Aristidēs, is m., *Aristides* poēsis, is, f., *work of poetry*epigramma, atis, n., ¹⁾ *inscription*, ²⁾ *epigram*Note: *Proper Nouns* in is, ys, as, like those in eus, es, drop the s in their form of address:

Alexis, Alexi; Cotys, Coty; Atlas, Atla, (Gen. Atlantis)

Names of nations often take es and as (instead of ēs)

Nom. pl.: Arcades, Acc. pl.: Arcadas

Macédones Macédonas

73. COMPARISON

In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison (gradūs comparātiōnis),

the Positive, Comparative and Superlative
positīvus, comparātīvus, superlātīvus.

74. The Comparative is formed by adding
ior (m. and f.) and **ius** (n.)
the Superlative, by adding
issimus, -a, -um, to the stem (19).

sevērus, severe;	sevēr- ior , 1) more severe, 2) too severe;	sevēr- issimus 1) most severe 2) very severe
levis, e, <i>light</i> ;	lev-ior;	lev-issimus
tenuis, e, <i>thin</i> ;	tenu-ior;	tenu-issimus
loquāx, <i>talkative</i> ;	loquāc-ior;	loquāc-issimus

75. Also participles when used as adjectives:

vigilāns, <i>watchful</i> ;	vigilant- ior ;	vigilant-issimus
egēns, <i>poor</i> ;	egent-ior;	egent-issimus
ōrnātus <i>adorned</i> ;	ōrnāt-ior;	ōrnāt-issimus

76. Note: aethēr tenuior est **quam** āēr,
the ether is thinner than the air;
senectūs loquāc**ior** est; *old age is rather talkative.*

77. DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE (46, 50)

The Abl. sg. ends in **e**;
the Nom. Neut. pl. ends in **a**;
the Gen. pl. ends in **um**.

Singular			Plural	
	m. and f.	n.	m, and f.	n,
Nom.	sevērior,	sevērius	sevērīōrēs,	severiōra
Acc.	sevērīōrem	sevērius	sevērīōrēs,	sevērīōra
Gen.	sevērīōris		sevērīōr um	
Dat.	sevērīōrī		sevērīōribus	
Abl.	sevērīōr e		sevērīōribus	

PECULIARITIES

78. Adjectives in **er** form their Superlative by adding **rimus**,
-a, -um to the **nom. sg. m.**:

pulcher, *beautiful*; pulchr-ior, pulcher - **rimus**
 liber, *free*; liber-ior, liber - **rimus**
 ācer, *keen*; ācr-ior, ācer - **rimus**
 celer, *swift*; celer-ior, celer - **rimus**

79. Adjectives in **ilis** form their Superlative **variously**:
Five form it regularly in **issimus**, -a, -um:

fertilis, ūtilis, mōbilis,
 amābilis and nōbilis;
fertile, useful, movable,
amiable, noble.

80. **Five** adjectives change **ilis** into **illimus**:

facilis, difficilis, *easy, difficult*,
 similis, dissimilis *like, unlike*,
 and humilis: *and low.*

facillimus, simillimus, humillimus.

Note: The other adjectives in **ilis** usually form no superlative in **issimus** (82).

81. Adjectives in **us** with **preceding vowel** form their degrees by means of **magis** and **maximē**:

idōneus, *fit*, magis idōneus, maximē idōneus
 pius, *pious*, magis pius, maximē pius
 arduus, *steep, hard*, magis arduus, maximē arduus
 but **aequus**, *fair, just*, **aequior**, **aequissimus** (7)
 antīquus, *ancient*, antīquior, antīquissimus

82. *Note:* Adjectives whose comparatives or superlatives are not used, and adjectives with unusual endings, may take **magis** and **maximē** (89):

a. laudābilis, { laudābīlior, maximē laud. (80, Note)
 praiseworthy, { magis laudābilis,
 alacer, *lively*, { alacrior, maximē alacer
 { magis alacer,
 b. hospitālis, *hospitable*, { hospitālissimus
 magis hospitālis { maximē hospitālis
 c. rudis, *unwrought*, magis rudis, maximē rudis
 d. sēdulus, *diligent*, magis sēdulus, maximē sēdulus

ANOMALA: IRREGULAR FORMATIONS

83. Adjectives in **dicus, ficus, volus** (-dicēns, faciēns, volēns).
 maledicus, *slanderosus*, maledic-**entior**, maledic-**entissimus**
 magnificus, *magnificent*, magnific-entior, magnific-entissimus
 benevolus, *benevolent*, benevol-entior, benevol-entissimus

84. bonus, *good*; melior, optimus
 malus, *bad*; pēior, pessimus
 magnus, *great*; māior, maximus
 parvus *small*; minor, minimus

85. **Sing.:** multus, *much*; no compar., plūrimus
 multa, " no compar., plūrima
 multum, " plūs, plūrimum
Plur.: multī, *many*; plūrēs, plūrimī
 multae, " plūrēs, plūrimae
 multa, " plūra, plūrima

Note: a. The sing. plūs, a larger amount, is a **substantive** only:

plūs pecūniae, *more money*

b. of plūs no other forms than plūs and plūris are used:

plūris hōc faciō, *I esteem this more highly*

c. The genitive of plurēs and plūra is **plurium** (77):

plūrēs, plūra, plurium, *more*
 complūrēs, complūra, complurium, *several*

d. plūrimī = plērīque; **gen. only** plūrimōrum

plūrimae = plēraeque; " " plūrimārum

plūrima = plēraque, " " plūrimōrum

86.

ABUNDANTIA

exterior, <i>outer</i>	extrēmus (extimus), <i>outermost</i>
inferior, <i>lower</i>	īnimus = īmus, <i>lowermost</i>
posterior, <i>next in</i>	postrēmus, <i>hindmost, last</i>
<i>order, time, place;</i>	(postumus, <i>lateborn</i>)
superior, <i>higher;</i>	summus , <i>highest</i>
	(suprēmus, <i>last</i>)
	(diēs suprēmus, <i>day of death</i>)

87. Note: The **positive forms** of the preceding adjectives are **rare**:

exterae nātiōnēs (gentēs)	<i>foreign nations</i>
īnferī, those below	apud īnferōs <i>in the infernal regions</i>
mare īnferum, <i>Tyrrhene Sea</i>	mare superum, <i>Adriatic Sea</i>
posterī, descendants	posterō diē, <i>on the following day</i>
superī dī, gods on high	omnia supera, īnfera etc.

Distinguish: superior, *higher in place*
 altior, *higher in extent upward*

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON: DEFECTIVA

88. Dēfectīva gradū positīvō: without a positive: (241)

a. citior, <i>hither, (adj.)</i>	citimus, <i>nearest on this side</i>
interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost, intimate</i>
prior, <i>first of two; former</i>	prīmus, <i>foremost, first</i>
propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>nearest</i>
ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>

b. dēterior, <i>less good; inferior</i>	dēterrimus, <i>meanest</i>
potior, <i>preferable</i>	potissimus, <i>most important</i>
Distinguish: pēior,	worse = more bad
dēterior,	worse = less good

89. Comparative or superlative supplied by synonyms or different forms of the same adjectives:

alacer, <i>lively;</i>	alacrior, laetissimus (82, a.)
ferus, <i>wild;</i>	ferōcior, ferōcissimus
frūgī, <i>worthy, honest;</i>	frūgālīor, frūgālissimus
gnārus, <i>acquainted</i>	
<i>with a thing; skilful;</i>	perītior, perītissimus
nēquam, <i>naughty;</i>	nēquior, nēquissimus
novus, <i>new;</i>	recentior, recentissimus

novissimus, last

agmen novissimum,	<i>rear guard</i>
propinquus, <i>near,</i>	propior, proximus (88)
prōvidus, <i>circumspect</i>	prōvidentior, prōvidentissimus
sacer, <i>sacred (to a god)</i>	sānctior, sacerrimus
salūtāris, <i>wholesome,</i>	salūtārīor, salūberrimus
vetus, <i>old,</i>	vetustior, veterrimus

90. Note:

- a. (decem, centum) annōs nātus, (10, 100) *years old*
 māior, minor nātū, *older, younger*
 maximus, minimus nātū, *oldest, youngest*
- b. Catō pater or Catō māior, *Cato Sr.*
 Catō fīlius or Catō minor, *Cato Jr.*
- c. superior Africānus or A. māior, *the elder Africanus*
 posterior Africānus, or A. minor. *the younger Africanus*
- d. iuvenis, *man betw. 40-45; (iūnior, sg., not used)*
 iūniōrēs, *younger class of citizens or of senators*
 senex, *more than 60 years old*
 senior, *betw. 45 and 60*

91. STRENGTHENING OF THE DEGREES

- a. **admodum** difficilis }
 valde difficilis } = difficillimus, **very** difficult
 perdifficilis }
- b. paulō difficilior quam, *somewhat more difficult than*
 etiam difficilior quam, *even more difficult than*
 multō difficilior quam, *by far more difficult than*
- c. **vel** difficillimus, **perhaps** the most difficult
quam difficillimus, **as difficult as possible**
 longē difficillimus, **by far the most difficult**

ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES

92. Most of the adjectives of the **2d declension** and some participles in **us**, when used as adjectives, form their adverbs by adding **ē** to their stems (19):

pulcher,	pulchr-ē,	<i>beautifully</i>
līber,	līber-ē,	<i>freely</i>
assiduus,	assidu-ē,	<i>without intermission</i>
ōrnātus,	ōrnāt-ē,	<i>elegantly</i>

93. Adjectives and some Participles of the **3d declension** ending in **ns**, when used as adjectives, form their adverbs by adding **er** to their stems; adjectives of **other** endings add **iter**:

clēmēns,	clēmēt-er,	<i>mildly, gently</i>
sapiēns,	sapiēt-er,	<i>wisely</i>
fēlīx,	fēlic-iter,	<i>luckily</i>
ācer,	ācr-iter	<i>keenly</i>
similis,	simil-iter,	<i>similarly</i>

94. Some **accus. sg. neut.** are used as adverbs:

multum,	<i>much;</i>	nimum,	<i>too much; too</i>
paulum,	<i>little;</i>	parum,	<i>too little</i>
facile,	<i>easily;</i>	nōn facile,	<i>with difficulty</i>
cēterum,	<i>for the rest</i>		

95. Many **abl. sg. neut.** are employed as adverbs:

citō,	<i>quickly</i>	necessāriō,	<i>necessarily</i>
cōsultō,	<i>on purpose</i>	necopinātō,	<i>unexpectedly</i>
continuō,	<i>right after</i>	optātō,	<i>acc. to wish</i>
crēbrō	<i>frequently</i>	perpetuō,	<i>perpetually</i>
falsō,	<i>falsely</i>	rārō,	<i>seldom</i>
fortuītō,	<i>by chance</i>	sēcrētō,	<i>secretly</i>
(dē, ex) imprōvisō,	<i>on a sudden</i>	sēdulō,	<i>busily</i>
manifestō,	<i>palpably</i>	sērō,	<i>(too) late</i>
mūtuō,	<i>mutually</i>	subitō,	<i>suddenly</i>

Distinguish continuō, *right after*
 continenter = perpetuō = assiduē

96. To the following adjectives correspond adverbs of **peculiar formation**:

a. bonus, **bene**, *well*; malus, **male**, *badly*
 alius, **aliter**, *otherwise*; propinquus, **prope**, *near*

b. audāx, audācter, *boldly*; sollers, **sollerter**, *skillfully*

c. nēquam, nēquiter, *worthlessly*
 diūturnus, diū, *a long time*
 fīdus, fidēliter, *faithfully*
 repentīnus, repente, *suddenly*
 temerārius, temere, *indiscreetly*
 recēns, nūper, *lately*
 impūne, *with impunity*

d. firmus, firmē or firmiter, *firmly*
 hūmānus, hūmānē or hūmāniter, *humanly; humanely*
 largus, largē or largiter, *abundantly*

e. certus, certē, *certainly; at least*; certō, *with certainty*,
 vērus, vērē, *according to truth*; vērō, *truly; assuredly*

97. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Only such adverbs as are derived from adjectives can be compared.

The **Comparative of the Adverb** is like the comparative of the corresponding adjective in its neuter form: (acc. sg.)

The **Superlative of the Adverb** is formed from the superlative of the corresponding adjective by adding *ē* to the stem (19):

	ōrnātē	ornātius	ōrnātissimē
	<i>elegantly</i>	¹ more <i>elegantly</i>	¹ most <i>elegantly</i>
		² too <i>elegantly</i>	² very <i>elegantly</i>
a.	prūdenter,	<i>prudently</i> ; prūdentius,	prūdentissimē
	celeriter,	<i>swiftly</i> ; celerius,	celerrimē
	crēbro,	<i>frequently</i> ; crēbrius,	crēberrimē
b.	bene	<i>well</i> ; melius,	optimē
	male,	<i>badly</i> ; pēius,	pessimē
	prope,	<i>near</i> ; propius,	proximē
	paulum	} <i>little</i> ;	minus,
	nōn multum		
	nēquiter,	<i>worthlessly</i> ; nēquius,	nēquissimē
	mātūrē,	{ ¹ <i>opportunistically</i> ; ² <i>early</i>	{ mātūrissimē māturrimē
		mātūrius,	

98. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

diū,	<i>long</i> ;	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe,	<i>often</i> ;	saepius,	saepissimē
magnopere	} <i>greatly</i> ;	{ magis, more (in degree)	{ maxime most (in degree)
magnō opere			
multum,	<i>much</i> ;	plūs,	plūrimum
		more (in extent)	most (in extent)

nūper, <i>lately</i> ;		nūperrimē, <i>quite recently</i>
meritō, <i>deservedly</i> ;		meritissimō
tūtō, <i>safely</i> ;	tūtius	tūtissimō
	potius, <i>rather</i> ,	potissimum <i>above all</i> ;
	preferably,	chiefly
	prius,	{ primō, <i>in the beginning</i>
	before; sooner	{ primum, <i>for the first</i>
		time; firstly
	posterius,	{ postrēmō, <i>at last</i>
	later	{ postrēmum, <i>for the</i>
		last time
satis, <i>enough</i> ,	satius, <i>better; more</i>	
	serviceable	
	nihilō sētius	{ nevertheless
	nihilō minus	{
	nōn sētius	<i>none the less</i>

99. *Note:* The three degrees, esp. the comparative, of adverbs in eē, iē, uē are very rare; they may be formed by means of magis and maximē; or supplied by synonymous expressions:

assiduē, *continually*, magis assiduē, *more incessantly*
 assiduissimē (Cic.) or maximā assiduitāte, *most incessantly*

NUMERALIA : NUMERALS

100. The **Question** is answered by

quot,	<i>how many?</i>	adiectīva cardinālia
quotus,	{ <i>which in order?</i>	adiectīva ordinālia
	{ <i>of which number in a row?</i>	
quotēni,	<i>how many at a time?</i>	adiectīva distribūtīva
quotiēns,	<i>how many times?</i>	adverbia numerālia

101.	Cardinālia	Ordinālia
1	ūnus, a, um, <i>one</i>	prīmus, a, um, <i>first</i>
2	duo, ae, o, <i>two</i>	secundus or alter, <i>second</i>
3	trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>
4	quattuor	quārtus
5	quīnque	quīntus
6	sex	sextus
7	septem	septimus
8	octō	octāvus
9	novem	nōnus
10	decem	decimus
11	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12	duodecim	duodecimus
13	tredecim	tertius decimus
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17	septendecim	septimus decimus
18	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus
19	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus
20	vīgintī	vicēsīmus
21	unus et vīgintī or vīgintī ūnus	ūnus et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus prīmus
22	duo et vīgintī or vīgintī duo	alter et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus alter
23	trēs et vīgintī or vīgintī trēs	tertius et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus tertius
28	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus
29	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus
30	trīgintā	tricēsīmus
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus

Distribūtīva	Adverbia numerālia	Notation
singulī, ae, a, <i>one by one</i> bīnī, ae, a, <i>two by two</i> ternī, <i>three by three</i> quaternī quīnī sēnī septēnī octōnī novēnī dēnī	semel, <i>once</i> bis, <i>twice</i> ter, <i>three times</i> quater quīnquiēs or ...iēns sexiēs septiēs octiēs noviēs deciēs	I II III III - IV V VI VII VIII VIII - IX X
ūndēnī duodēnī ternī dēnī quaternī dēnī quīnī dēnī sēnī dēnī septēnī dēnī duodēvīcēnī ūndēvīcēnī vīcēnī	ūndeciēs duodeciēs ter deciēs quater deciēs quīnquiēs deciēs sexiēs deciēs septiēs deciēs duodēvīciēs ūndēvīciēs vīciēs	XI XII XIII XIII - XIV XV XVI XVII XVIII XIII - XIX XX
singulī et vīcēnī or vīcēnī singulī bīnī et vīcēnī or vīcēnī bīnī ternī et vīcēnī or vīcēnī ternī duodētrīcēnī ūndētrīcēnī trīcēnī	semel et vīciēs or vīciēs semel bis et vīciēs or vīciēs bis ter et vīciēs or vīciēs ter duodētrīciēs ūndētrīciēs trīciēs	XXI XXII XXIII XXVIII XXIX XXX
quadrāgēnī quīnquāgēnī sexāgēnī septuāgēnī octōgēnī nōnāgēnī	quadrāgiēs quīnquāgiēs sexāgiēs septuāgiēs octōgiēs nōnāgies	XL L LX LXX LXXX XC

100	centum	centēsīmus
200	ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsīmus
300	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
400	quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus
500	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
600	sescentī	sescentēsīmus
700	septingentī	septingentēsīmus
800	octingentī	octingentēsīmus
900	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus
1000	mīlle	mīllēsīmus
2000	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus
1000000	decīēs centēna mīlia	decīēs centīēs mīllēsīmus
5000000	quīnquāgiēs centēna mīlia	quīnquagiēs centīēs mīllēsīmus

102. DECLENSION OF THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

The only **cardinals** declined are

- 1, ūnus, duo, trēs
- 2, the hundreds above 100
- 3, the plural mīlia

	m.	f.	n.		m.	f.	n.
Nom.	ūnus,	ūna,	ūnum		duo,	duae,	duo
Acc.	ūnum,	ūnam,	ūnum		duōs or duo,	duas,	duo
Gen.		ūnīus			duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum
Dat.		unī			duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā,	ūnō		duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus

	m.	f.	n.	n.
Nom.	trēs,	trēs,	tria	mīlia
Acc.	trēs,	trēs,	tria	mīlia
Gen.		trium		mīlium
Dat.		tribus		mīlibus
Abl.		tribus		mīlibus

103. a. Ambō, ae, ō, both, is declined like duo, ae, o. (158):

Erant itinera duo
 Ambōrum cōsulum
 Cum duābus lēgiōnibus

centēnī ducēnī tre cēnī quadrīngēnī quīngēnī sescēnī septīngēnī octīngēnī nōngēnī	centiēs ducentiēs tre centiēs quadrīngentiēs quīngentiēs sescentiēs septīngentiēs octīngentiēs nōngentiēs	C CC CCC CCCC D DC DCC DCCC DCCCC
singula mīlia bīna mīlia deciēs centēna mīlia quīnquāgiēs centēna mīlia	mīlliēs bis mīlliēs deciēs centiēs mīlliēs quīnquāgiēs centiēs mīlliēs	M = CIO MM = II \overline{X} \overline{L}

b. mille is an indeclinable adjective,

mīlia is a declinable substantive:

mīlle hominēs : *a thousand men*

mīlle hominum : *of a thousand men*

tria mīlia hominum : *three thousand men*

tribus mīlibus hominum : *to three thousand men*

104. The **ordinals** and **distributives** are declined like adjectives of the 1st and 2d declensions; the gen pl. of the distributives (exc. singulī), however, usually ends in um instead of ōrum:

singulōrum; bīnum, bīnārum, bīnum

Note: alter, a um, *second*, is declined like ūnus, a, um:

gen.: alterīus; dat.: alterī.

105. COMPOUND NUMERALS

a. In numbers from 21-99 incl.

either the **lower** denomination **precedes with** et,

or the **higher** denomination **precedes without** et:

sex et vīgintī or vīgintī sex.

b. In numbers above 100

the **higher** denomination **precedes** the lower one, usually **without** et:

101 - centum (et) ūnus

110 - centum (et) decem

126 - centum vīgintī sex

2300 *men* - duo mīlia trecenti hominēs

or duo mīlia **hominum** et trecentī

with 2300 men - cum duōbus mīlibus trecentīs hominibus

Note: *Unus* must be separated from a plural substantive:

ūnus et vīgintī mīlitēs

ūnīus et vīgintī mīlitum

ūnum et vīgintī mīlia hominum

c. The compounds of tens with 8 or 9 are commonly expressed by subtraction, duo- and ūn- remaining unchanged:

duodētrīgintā nāvēs, 28 ships

ūndēcentum nautae, 99 sailors

but duae et trīgintā nāvēs, 32 ships

USES OF NUMERALS

106. An “**infinite**” number is expressed by

sescentī, mīllēsīmus, mīlliēs:

sescentī cecidērunt, **thousands fell**

vix mīllēsima est pars **an utterly small fraction**

mīlliēs melius est **this is infinitely better**

107. Dates and hours are expressed by **cardinals**:

In 1821: annō mīllēsīmō octingentēsīmō vīcēsīmō ūnō (or prīmō):

at 3 o'clock: {exeunte hōrā nōnā or ineunte hōrā decimā
{modernized: hōrā tertiā (i. e. exeunte)

108. **Fractions** (partēs) are expressed by cardinals and ordinals: the numerator by cardinals, the denominator by ordinals;

trēs septimae (partēs is understood) = $\frac{3}{7}$

However,

a. if the numerator is 1, the denominator only is given;

septima pars = $\frac{1}{7}$; decima pars = $\frac{1}{10}$;

b. if the numerator is but **one smaller** than the denominator, the numerator only is mentioned:

sex partēs = $\frac{6}{7}$; novem partēs = $\frac{9}{10}$

c. dimidia pars = $\frac{1}{2}$.

109. Distributives are used

a.: to express "**so many apiece, so many at a time**"

dēna iūgera in singulōs dīscrīpsit:

he allotted ten acres to each one.

Note: 1. One of the two distributives is sometimes replaced by a cardinal:

decem iūgera in singulōs dīscrīpsit;

dēna iūgera in cīvēs dīscrīpsit.

2. If "each, apiece" is understood, it is not expressed:

ūnum ōs habēmus, duōs pedēs, duās manūs.

b.: excepting singulī and ternī, the distributives are used **as cardinals** with nouns **plural in form**, but **singular in meaning**:

bīnae litterae, *two epistles*;

110. Note: Unī and trīnī take the place of singulī and ternī.

111. Note: a. Unī and trīnī have **one** meaning,
singulī and ternī have **two** meanings,
bīnī, quaternī etc. have **three** meanings.

ūnae, trīnae litterae : *one, three letters (epistles)*

singulae, ternae, litterae: { *one, three characters at a time*
 one, three letters at a time

bīnae, quaternae etc. l'ae: { *two, four etc. letters*
 two, four etc. characters at a time
 two, four etc. letters at a time

(See also 158)

b. **duo** liberī = *two children*:

Liberī is plural both in form and in meaning.

112. Numeral adverbs and distributives are employed in the

MULTIPLICATION TABLE

$1 \times 1 = 1$: semel ūnum est ūnum

$2 \times 1 = 2$: bis singula sunt duo

$3 \times 1 = 3$: ter singula sunt tria

$1 \times 3 = 3$: semel tria sunt tria

$2 \times 3 = 6$: bis terna sunt sex

$3 \times 3 = 9$: ter terna sunt novem

113. Multiplicātīva : Adjectives in plex, plicis.

simplex,	<i>one-fold</i>	quadruplex,	<i>four-fold</i>
duplex,	<i>two-fold</i>	septemplex,	<i>seven-fold</i>
triplex,	<i>three-fold</i>	decemplex,	<i>ten-fold</i>

114. Adverbia numerālia in um (formed from the ordinals):

primum,	iterum,	tertium	postrēmum,
<i>for the first,</i>	<i>second,</i>	<i>third</i>	<i>last time;</i>
	iterum cōnsul,	<i>consul for the second time.</i>	

115. Note: a. Distinguish the preceding series from the following:

primum,	deinde,	tum, tum.....	postrēmō or dēnique,
<i>firstly,</i>	<i>secondly,</i>	<i>thirdly,.....</i>	<i>lastly</i>
or: <i>in the 1st place, then, next..... lastly</i>			
b. <i>prīmō at first; deinde, afterward; postea, later on</i>			

PRONOMINA**116. I. Prōnōmina persōnālia - Personal Pronouns**

There are **reflexive** and **non-reflexive** personal pronouns; they are reflexive, when they refer to the subject of the sentence; otherwise they are non-reflexive.

117. FIRST PERSON

Non-reflexive Forms			Reflexive Forms	
Singular				
Nom.	ego,	<i>I</i>	—	
Acc.	mē,	<i>me (23)</i>	mē, <i>myself</i> (as object: 23)	
Gen.	meī,	<i>of me</i>	meī, <i>of myself</i>	
Dat.	mihi,	<i>to or for me</i>	mihi, <i>to or for myself</i>	
Abl.	{ ā mē,	<i>by me</i>	ā mē, <i>by myself</i>	
	{ mēcūm,	<i>with me</i>	mēcūm, <i>with myself</i>	
Plural				
Nom.	nōs,	<i>we</i>	—	
Acc.	nōs,	<i>us</i>	nōs, <i>ourselves</i> (as object: 23)	
Gen.	{ nostrī	<i>of us</i>	nostrī, <i>of ourselves</i>	
	{ nostrūm,	<i>of, among us</i>	nostrūm, <i>of, among our-</i> <i>selves</i>	
Dat.	nōbīs	<i>to or for us</i>	nōbīs, <i>to or for ourselves</i>	
Abl.	{ ā nōbīs,	<i>by us</i>	ā nōbīs, <i>by ourselves</i>	
	{ nōbīscūm	<i>with us</i>	nōbīscūm, <i>with ourselves</i>	

118.

SECOND PERSON

Non-reflexive Forms		Reflexive Forms	
Singular			
Nom.	tū, <i>thou, you</i>	—	
Acc.	tē, <i>you (object 23)</i>	tē, <i>yourself (object 23)</i>	
Gen.	tuī, <i>of you</i>	tuī, <i>of yourself</i>	
Dat.	tibi, <i>to or for you</i>	tibi, <i>to or for yourself</i>	
Abl.	{ ā tē, <i>by you</i> tēcum, <i>with you</i>	{ ā tē, <i>by yourself</i> tēcum, <i>with yourself</i>	
Plural			
Nom.	vōs, <i>you</i>	—	
Acc.	vōs, <i>you (object)</i>	vōs, <i>yourselves (object)</i>	
Gen.	{ vestrī, <i>of you</i> vestrum, <i>of, among you</i>	{ vestrī, <i>of yourselves</i> vestrum, <i>of, among your-</i> <i>selves</i>	
Dat.	vōbīs, <i>to or for you</i>	vōbīs, <i>to or for yourselves</i>	
Abl.	{ ā vōbīs, <i>by you</i> vōbīscum, <i>with you</i>	{ ā vobis, <i>by yourselves</i> vōbīscum, <i>with yourselves</i>	

119. Note : a. Nostrī and vestrī are **objective** genitives :

Memor nostrī, vestrī, *mindful of us, you;*

b. Nostrum and vestrum are **partitive** genitives :

Quis **vestrum**, *who of you?* Nēmō nostrum, *no one of us*

c. But nōs (vōs) omnēs, **all** of us (you)

Genitive: nostrum (vestrum) omnium

Dative : nōbīs (vōbīs) omnibus

Ablative : { ā nōbīs (vōbīs) omnibus
nōbīscum omnibus
cum omnibus vōbīs

120.

THIRD PERSON

Note: The non-reflexive form for the **nominative** of the third person is wanting; but it is **replaced** by the nominative of the determinative pronoun; the non-reflexive forms for the **oblique** cases, however, are **the same** as the corresponding forms of the determinative pronoun.

Non-reflexive Forms			Reflexive Forms	
Singular				
Nom.	is, ea, id,	<i>he, she, it</i>	—	[object]
Acc.	eum, eam, id,	<i>him, her, it</i>	sē,	<i>himself, herself, itself</i>
Gen.	ēius,	<i>of him.....</i>	suī,	<i>of himself, hers., its.</i>
Dat.	eī,	<i>to him.....</i>	sibi,	<i>to himself, hers., its.</i>
Abl.	{ eō, eā, eō,	<i>by means of...</i>	{ (ā) sē,	<i>by himself, by her- self, by itself</i>
	{ abeō, <i>by him</i> ; cum eō,	<i>with him</i>	{ sēcum,	<i>with himself, with herself, with itself</i>
Plural				
Nom.	iī (eī), eae, ea,	<i>they</i>	—	
Acc.	eōs, eās, ea,	<i>them</i>	sē,	<i>themselves (object)</i>
Gen.	eōrum	} <i>of them</i>	suī,	<i>of themselves</i>
	eārum			
Dat.	iīs (eīs)	<i>to them</i>	sibi,	<i>to themselves</i>
Abl.	{ iīs (eis)	<i>by means of</i>	{ (ā) sē,	<i>by themselves</i>
	{ ab iīs, <i>by them</i> cum iīs, <i>with them</i>			
sē laudat, <i>he praises himself, his own person</i> eum laudat, <i>he praises him, another person</i>				

STRENGTHENED FORMS

121. Note: Many forms of the personal pronouns can be strengthened: sē by reduplication, tū by appending tē, the other forms, exc. the non-refl. 3d person and the gen. (pl.), by appending met:

egomet, mēmet, mihimet; nōsmet, nōbīsmet
tūte, tēmet, tibimet; vōsmet, vōbīsmet
sēsē, sēsē, sibimet, ā sēsē

122. PRONOMINA POSSESSIVA POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Non-reflexive Forms		Reflexive Forms	
1st and 2d Person		1st and 2d Persons:	
All cases of		The oblique cases of	
meus,	a, um, <i>my</i>	meus,	a, um, <i>my</i>
noster,	a, um, <i>our</i> (30)	noster,	a, um, <i>our</i>
tuus,	a, um, <i>your</i> (sg.)	tuus,	a, um, <i>your</i> (sg.)
vester,	a, um, <i>your</i> (pl.)	vester,	a, um, <i>your</i> (pl.)
3d Person:		3d Person:	
The unchangeable genitives		All cases of	
ēius,	<i>his, her, its</i>	suus,	a, um, <i>his etc. own</i>
eōrum, eārum, eōrum	<i>their</i>	suus,	a, um, <i>their own</i>

123.

Note 1: Meus, noster, tuus, vester and suus are **pronominal adjectives** of the 1st and 2d decl. (30);

ēius, eōrum, eārum, are the **unchangeable genitives** of the determinative pronoun (120, 128).

Note 2: If the possessive is understood from the context, it is omitted: amicum laudat, *he praises his (own) friend*

124. Suus is used to refer:

a) to the **subject**:

amicum suum laudat, *he praises his own friend*

b) to the **object**, when it means "**his own**":

amicus **suus** eum nōn laudat } **his own friend**.....
amicus **suus** eī nōn fīdit }

Eius is used in all other cases:

amicus **ēius** mortuus est, *his friend is dead*

(referring to a word mentioned previously)

amicum **ēius** laudat, *he praises his friend* (another person's whose name is already known).

125.**STRENGTHENED FORMS**

suōpte pondere, *by its own weight*

suāpte manū, *with his own hand*

PRONOMINA DEMONSTRATIVA: DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS**126.**

Hīc, haec, hōc, **this** (*near me*)

iste, ista, istud, **that** (*near you*)

ille, illa, illud, **that** (*near him*)

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	hīc,	haec,	hōc	hī,	hae,	haec
Acc.	hunc,	hanc,	hōc	hōs,	hās,	haec
Gen.		hūius		hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.		huīc			hīs	
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc		hīs	
Nom.	ille,	illa,	illud	illī,	illae,	illa
Acc.	illum,	illam,	illud	illōs,	illās,	illa
Gen.		illīus		illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum
Dat.		illī			illīs	
Abl.	illō	illā,	illō		illīs	

127. *Note 1:* Iste is declined like ille.

Note 2: The forms of hīc ending in **s** may be **strengthened** by **ce**:

hūius**ce**, hōs**ce**, hās**ce**, hīs**ce**.

Note 3: A secondary form for hae is haec.

Note 4: Rare forms for ille and iste are:

illīc, illaec, illūc; istīc, istaec, istūc (acc. on last:8, c)

Note 5: When the interrogative **ne** is appended to the old forms in **ce**, the ending **-cene** is weakened into **cine**:

hīcine, haecine, hōcine, illīcine?

PRONOMINA DETERMINATIVA: DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS

128. The determinative pronouns **specify** the objects for which they stand by referring

either to something preceding

or to a relative following:

Is, ea, id : ¹⁾ *he, she, it, that one* (person or thing mentioned **before**);

²⁾ *he, she, that* (as antecedent to a relative **following**):

idem, eadem, idem, **the same**;

ipse, ipsa, **ipsum, -self** (130).

Note: The declension of **is** is given in n. 120; (see also 123.)

129.	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	īdem	eadem	īdem	īdem	eadem	ēadem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	ēadem
Gen.	ēiusdem			eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.		eīdem			īsdem	
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		īsdem	
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Gen.		ipsīus		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.		ipsī			ipsīs	
Abl.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum		ipsīs	

130. Distinguish the determinative **self** from the reflexive **self**:

a. The determinative self, **ipse**, which is used to **emphasize** a word, **agrees** in gender, number and case with its substantive or pronoun:

ipsī puerī : *the boys themselves*

ipsōrum puerōrum : *of the boys themselves*

egomet ipse, nostrum ipsōrum, nōbismet ipsīs.....

b. The reflexive self, **sē**, **suī**, **sibi**, **never modifies**, but **refers** to the subject only, being dependent in case on the word by which it is governed:

(ipse) sē laudat : *he praises himself*

(ipsa) suī immemor est : *she is unmindful of herself*

(ipsī) sibi cōsulunt : *they care for themselves*

131. Instead of the plural **īdem**, also **iīdem** and **eīdem**, instead of the plural **īdem**, also **iīdem** and **eīdem** occur.

132. PRONOMINA RELATIVA = RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, quae, quod, *who, which*

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.		cū	ius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		cui			quibus	
Abl.	{	ā quō	ā quā	quō	ā quibus	quibus
	{	quōcum	quācum	quōcum	quibuscum	

133. Note 1: The relative refers to a substantive or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its **antecedent**:

puer, quī bonus est laudātur

quī bonus est, **is** laudātur

quī bonus est, laudātur.

134. Note 2: Instead of **quōcum** also **cum quō**,

“ “ **quācum** “ **cum quā**,

“ “ **quibuscum** “ **cum quibus** occurs.

135. GENERAL RELATIVES

Relative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs may be made **general in signification** by taking **cumque** or by being **doubled**:

1. Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever*
are declined like quī, quae, quod, cumque remaining unchanged:

cūiscumque, cuicumque...;

they are both **substantives**: quicumque bonus est, laudātur,
and **adjectives** : quaecumque rēs.....

2. **Quisquis** (subst.), *whoever*
quidquid (subst.), *whatever*
quōquō modō, *in whatever manner*

Note: Of quisquis only the 3 preceding forms are in common use.

PRONOMINA INTERROGATIVA : INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

136. **Quis**, *who?* **Quid**, *what?*
(used as substantives.)

Singular			Plural	
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quae
Gen.	cūius		quōrum	
Dat.	cui		quibus	
Abl.	ā quō	quo	ā quibus	quibus

Note: Quis is either **masc.** or of **indeterminate** gender: m. or f.

137. Quī, quae, **quod**, *what kind of? what? which?*
are used as **adjectives**; they are declined like the relative.

138. Uter, utra, utrum, { *which of two persons?*
 { *which or what of two things?*
are used both as **substantives** and as **adjectives**. (Decl. 154)

Substantives	Adjectives
quis nostrum, <i>who of us (many)?</i>	quī rex, <i>what kind of king?</i>
uter nostrum, <i>which of us two?</i>	
quid factum est, <i>what has happened?</i>	utra manus, <i>which hand?</i>
	quod facinus, <i>what outrage?</i>

139. STRENGTHENED FORMS OF THE INTERROGATIVE**Substantives**

Quis**nam**, quidnam? *who, what indeed?*
 quis tandem, quid tandem? *who, what in the world?*

Adjectives

Quānam, quaenam, quodnam? *of what kind indeed?*
 quaenam rēs? quae tandem rēs?

140.

Note: Quī (an old abl.) = quo modo? *In what manner, how?*
 Quī fit? *How does it happen?*

141. PRONOMINA INDEFINITA: INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Used as Substantives	Used as Adjectives
1. aliquis aliquid <i>someone something</i>	aliquī, aliqua , aliquid <i>some</i>
dīcit aliquis, <i>someone says</i> dīcit aliquid, <i>he says something</i>	aliquī rēx <i>aliqua rēs</i> aliquid verbum <i>aliqua verba</i>
2. quis quid <i>some one anything</i>	quī, quae or qua , quod <i>any</i>
(used especially after sī, nisi, nē, num and relatives)	
sī quis, <i>if any one</i> sī quid, <i>if anything</i>	sī quī rēx, sī quae or qua rēs sī quod verbum, sī quae or qua verba
nē quis, { <i>lit: lest any one</i> { <i>usu: that no one</i>	nē quī puer, <i>that no boy</i> nē qua causa, <i>that no cause</i> nē qua verba, <i>that no words</i>
nē quid that nothing	

142. Note 1: The compounds of quis and quī are declined like quis and quī.

But **aliqua** = ¹) fem.sg.nom.; ²) neut.pl.n. and acc. of aliquis;
quae or **qua** = ¹) fem.sg.nom.; ²) neut.pl.n. and acc. of quis.
 The prefix *ali-* and the appended syllables remain unchanged.

143. Note 2: quis and aliquis are sometimes used as adjectives;
 quī and aliquī are sometimes used as substantives:

sī quis rēx = sī quī rēx

sī quī dīcit = sī quis dīcit

144. Note 3: quispiam, quaepiam, quippiam (quidpiam) =
 aliquis, aliquid
 quispiam, quaepiam, quoppiam (quodpiam) =
 aliquī, aliquae, aliquid.

145. Note 4: num quis = **ecquis**; num qui = **ecquī**
 num quis dīxit, *did any one say.....?*
 ecqua civitās est, *is there perhaps any city.....?*

146.

Used as Substantives	Used as Adjectives
3 <i>néuter, néutra, néutrum</i> <i>neither of two</i>	<i>néuter, néutra, néutrum</i> <i>neither of two</i>
4 <i>nēmō nobody:</i> <i>nēmō, nēminem, nūllius</i> <i>nēminī, ā nūllō</i> <i>nihil, nothing:</i> <i>nihil, nihil, nūllius rei</i> <i>nūllī rei, nūllā rē</i>	<i>nūllus, nūlla, nūllum</i> <i>(154)</i> <i>no</i>
5 Sg. <i>quisquam, ūlla, quidquam</i> pl. <i>ūllī, ūllae, ūlla</i> <i>anybody</i> <i>nēmō vēnit, nobody came</i> neque quisquam <i>vēnit,</i> <i>(and not anyone), i. e.</i> and nobody came <i>nihil fēcit, he did nothing</i> neque quidquam <i>fēcit,</i> and he did nothing	<i>ūllus, ūlla, ūllum</i> <i>ūllī, ūllae, ūlla</i> <i>any</i> <i>nūlla spēs no hope</i> neque ūlla spēs, <i>(and not any) i. e. and no hope</i> <i>sine ūllā spē, without any</i> <i>hope</i>

147. Note: *Nēmō* and *quisquam*, instead of *nūllus* and *ūllus*, are added;

a. to **adjectives** used as **personal** masc. substantives

b. often to personal masculine **substantives:**

a. *nēmō Rōmānus, no Roman*
neque quisquam doctus, and no learned man

b. *nēmō cīvis, no citizen*

neque quisquam servus, and no slave

But: *nūlla rēs, no thing*

neque ūlla rēs, and no thing

148. Used as Substantives	Used as Adjectives
6 <i>quīdam: quaedam, quiddam</i> <i>a certain one</i>	<i>quīdam, quaedam, quoddam</i> <i>a certain</i>
<i>Note: md is changed into nd:</i> <i>quendam, quandam, quorundam</i>	<i>amīcus quīdam, a certain friend</i> <i>(who might be named, if necessary)</i>

GENERAL INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

149. Used as Substantives	Used as Adjectives
<p>7. quisque, quidque each one severally</p> <p>----- Note: Quisque usually follows: a superlative: optimus quisque, <i>all the best</i> an ordinal: quotus quisque, <i>how few</i> (in leading cl. only) <i>quintō quōque annō, every fourth year</i> <i>tertiō quōque diē every other day</i> a reflexive: prō sē quisque, <i>each to the best of his power</i></p> <p>sim. a relative, an interrogative pronoun or adverb</p>	<p>quisque, quaeque, quodque each (severally)</p>
<p>150. 8. ūnusquisque, ūnum- quidque each one individually Gen.: ūnīuscūiusque Dat.: ūnīcūique.</p>	<p>ūnusquisque, -quaeque, -quodque each (individually)</p>
<p>151. 9. uterque, ūtraque, utrumque each of two separately</p>	<p>uterque, ūtraque, utrumque each of two separately (See n. 154 and 158)</p>

152. Note 1: -quisque and uterque are distributive;
see n. 149-151

Omnēs and ambō are collective;
omnes = *all together*
ambō = *two together, both*

153. Note 2: Other general indefinite pronouns are:

Used as Substantives	Used as Adjectives
10 quīvīs, quaevis; quid vīs any one you will	quīvīs, quaevis, quod vīs any you will
11 quīlibet, quaelibet, quid libet any one you please	quīlibet, quaelibet, quod libet any you please
12 utérvīs, útravīs, utrúmvis either of two you will	utérvīs, útravīs, utrúmvis either of two you will
13 utérlibet, utrálíbet, utrúmlibet either of two you please	utérlibet, utrálíbet, utrúmlibet either of two you please

159.

CORRELATIVES

The relation of question and answer is expressed by correlative pronouns and adverbs.

160. Prōnōmina Correlātiva: **Correlative Pronouns**

Question	Definite Answer	Indefinite Answer
Interrogative	Determ. & Relative	Indefinite Pron.
quis, <i>who?</i>	is, quī, <i>he who</i>	aliquis, <i>someone</i>
quālis, <i>of what sort?</i>	tālis, quālis, <i>such as</i>	—
quantus, <i>how</i>	tantus, quantus,	—
<i>great?</i>	<i>so great as</i>	
quantum, <i>how</i>	tantum, quantum,	aliquantum, <i>not a</i>
<i>much?</i>	<i>so much as</i>	<i>little</i>
quot, <i>how many?</i>	tot, quot, <i>so many as</i>	aliquot, <i>several;</i>
	<small>Note: tot and quot are indeclinable.</small>	<i>a goodly number</i>

161. Note: Totidem, just as many, tantundem, just as much
 quotquot = quotcumque *how many soever*

162. Note: Tantus, a, um and quantus, a, um, are adjectives;
 tantum, ī, n., and quantum, ī, n., are substantives:
 tanta pecūnia = tantum pecuniae, *so much money*

163. **Correlative Pronominal Adverbs**

I. Adverbia locī - Adverbs of Place		
1. Interrogātiva \ ubī, <i>where;</i> unde, <i>whence</i> et relātiva / quō, <i>where, whither</i> quā (via), <i>by</i> <i>what way</i>		
2. Dēterminātiva	3. Dēmōnstrātiva	4. Indēfīnīta
ibī, <i>there</i> ibīdem, <i>in the same</i> <i>place</i>	hīc, <i>here</i> istīc, <i>there (near</i> <i>you)</i> illīc, <i>there (near</i> <i>him)</i>	alicubī, <i>somewhere</i> alibī, <i>elsewhere</i> usquam, <i>anywhere</i> (<i>in sent. with neg.</i> <i>meaning</i>)
eō, <i>there = thither</i> eōdem, <i>to the</i> <i>same place</i>	hūc, <i>here = hither</i> istūc, <i>there = thither</i> illūc, <i>there = thither</i>	aliquō, <i>to some place</i> aliō, <i>to another pl.</i> quōquam, <i>to any pl.</i>
inde, <i>thence, from</i> <i>there</i> indidem, <i>from the</i> <i>same place</i>	hīnc, <i>hence, from</i> <i>here</i> istīnc, <i>thence (2d p.)</i> illīnc, <i>thence (3d p.)</i>	alicunde, <i>from some-</i> <i>where</i> aliunde, <i>from anoth.</i> — [<i>place</i>]
eā, <i>on that side</i> eādem, <i>by the</i> <i>same way</i>	hāc, <i>by this way</i> ¹ istāc, <i>by that way</i> ² illāc, <i>by that way</i> ³	aliquā, <i>on some way</i> aliā, <i>on another w.</i> —

General Relatives	General Indefinites
ubicumque, <i>wherever</i>	ubique, <i>everywhere</i>
quocumque, <i>to whatever place</i>	nusquam, <i>nowhere</i>
undecumque, <i>from whatever pl.</i>	undique, <i>from all sides</i>

164. Aliquō locō = alicubi *somewhere*
 aliō locō = alibi *elsewhere*
 (in) omnibus locis *everywhere*

Note: Ubique is used almost exclusively after relative and interrogative pronouns:

omnēs, quī ubique sunt *all, wherever they may be*

165. II. Adverbia temporis: Adverbs of Time.	
1. Interrogātiva \ quādō (int. and rel.) } <i>when</i> et relātiva { cum (relative) } <i>quotiēns, how often</i> <i>quam diū, how long</i>	
2. Dēterminātiva	3. Dēmōnstrātiva
tum \ <i>then</i> , tunc } <i>at that time</i> cum....., tum... <i>when..., then...</i> antēā, <i>before (any fixed time)</i> postēā, <i>after (any fixed time)</i>	nunc, now antehāc, <i>before (this present time)</i> posthāc, <i>after (this present time)</i>
totiēns, <i>so often</i> (totiēns, quotiēns) tam diū, <i>so long</i> (tam diū, quam diū)	aliquando, <i>at some time</i> aliās, <i>at another time</i> umquam (<i>in neg. sent.</i>), <i>at any time</i> aliquotiēns, <i>some, i. e. several times</i> aliquamdiū, <i>for some (considerable) time</i>
General Relatives quādcumque, <i>whenever</i> quotiēns cumque, <i>however often</i>	General Indefinites numquam, <i>never</i>

166. *Note:* a. quondam, *at a certain time; formerly*
 like quidam, *a certain one*
 b. olim, ¹⁾ *formerly*; ²⁾ *at a future date*

167. III. Adverbia modī : Adverbs of Manner and Degree

Interrogātīva et relātīva		Dēterminātīva	
ut , (utī), <i>how</i>		ita , sic { ⁽¹⁾ <i>so, in such a manner</i> ⁽²⁾ <i>so, to such a degree</i>	
quam { (esp. before adj. and adv.) <i>how</i>		item , itidem , <i>in the same manner</i>	
<i>quam bonus, how good</i> <i>quam bene, how well</i>		tam { (esp. before adj. and adv.) <i>so</i>	
		tam fortis , <i>so brave</i> tam fortiter , <i>so bravely</i>	

168. Note: Tot puerī = tam multī puerī
General Rel. : utcumque = *howsoever*

169. VERBS

The inflection of the **Verb (Conjugation)** comprises :

- Verb** forms proper (verbum finitum), expressing mode, tense, voice and **person**,
- Noun** forms (verbum infinitum) expressing :
—, (tense), voice and **case**.

170. Verb Forms with Personal Endings

3 modī	6 tempora	2 genera	3 persōnae
Indicātīvus: (<i>mode of reality</i>)	Continued Action: Praesēns Imperfectum Fūtūrum I.	Actīvum: (<i>Subject represented as acting.</i>)	Person speaking: 1st ps. sg. and pl.
Coniūctīvus: (<i>mode of conception</i>)	Completed Action: Perfectum Plusquam-perfectum	Passīvum: (<i>Subject represented as acted upon</i>)	Person spoken to: 2d ps. sg. and pl.
Imperātīvus: (<i>mode of command</i>)	Fūtūrum II. (exāctum)	(About the Dēpōnēns see n. 193.)	Person spoken about: 3d ps. sg. and pl.

171. Noun Forms with Case Endings

Substantives: { Infinitīvus, Gerundium, Supīnum.	Adjectives: { Gerundīvum, Participium.
Tenses: Praesēns, Fūtūrum, Perfectum. (See Note.)	
Voices: Actīvum, Passīvum.	
Cases: Nōminātīvus et cāsūs oblīquī.	

Note: The noun-forms of the verb have no independent tenses; they denote action contemporaneous, subsequent, or prior to that of the finite verb.

172. INFLECTION OF THE VERB.

The forms of the Verb are derived from three Stems, the **Present Stem**, the **Perfect Stem**, and the **Participial Stem**, (177)

and, accordingly, comprise three systems, the **Present System**, the **Perfect System** and the **Participial System**.

173. The manner of deriving verbal forms from the perfect and participial stems is the same for all Latin verbs; but there are **four** different types of derivation from the present stem, known as the **Four Conjugations**.

174. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

The four conjugations are distinguished by the endings of the **present infinite active**:

1st: āre,	2d: ēre,	3d: ere,	4th: īre,
laudāre,	monēre,	regere,	audire,
<i>to praise,</i>	<i>to advise,</i>	<i>to rule,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>

175. FORMS OF THE VERB PROPER (169.)

Every form of the verbum finitum consists of one of the three **stems** (172) and an **ending**.

The **ending** is made up of **signs** for mode, tense and person. The signs for mode and tense will be given in the single conjugations; the personal endings are contained in the following

176. TABLE OF PERSONAL ENDINGS

Voices	Active					Active			
	Indicative			Subj.	Pass. Depon. Indic. Subjunct.	Imperative		Pass.	Depon.
Modes									
Tenses	Pres. and II Fut.	Impf. Pluperf.	Perf.	All Tens.	All Tens.	Present	Future		
1st ps.sg.	o	m	ī	m	r	—	—	—	—
2d " "	s	s	isti	s	ris	no en'dg	tō	not used	re
3d " "	t	t	it	t	tur	—	(tō)	—	—
1st ps.pl.	mus	mus	mus	mus	mur	—	—	—	—
2d " "	tis	tis	istis	tis	mini	te	tōte	not used	mini
3d " "	nt	nt	ērunt	nt	ntur	—	(ntō)	—	—

177.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Three forms of the verb are known as the *principal parts*, because they show the *three stems* from which all other forms are derived:

1. The **Present Infinitive Active**
2. The **Perfect Indicative Active**
3. The **Perfect Participle Passive**

	Pres. Infinitive Act.	Perf. Indic. A.	Perf. Part. Pass.	
I.	laud-ā-re	laudāv-ī	laudāt-um	<i>to praise</i>
II.	mon-ē-re	monu-ī	monit-um	<i>to advise</i>
III.	{reg-e-re	rēx-ī	rēct-um	<i>to rule</i>
	{cap-e-re	cēp-ī	capt-um	<i>to take</i>
IV.	aud-ī-re	audīv-ī	audīt-um	<i>to hear</i>

Note: The **neuter** of the **perf. part. pass.** (alike in form with the supine act.) is chosen to represent the third principal part, because many verbs lack the masc. and fem. forms.

Where all forms of the **perf. part. pass.** are wanting, the **future participle active** in -ūrus, if it occurs, is given.

Many verbs lack the third stem, some both the second and third entirely.

178. The **1st ps. sg. of the pres. indic. act.**, the "**name**" of the verb in the Latin dictionaries, is easily formed from the first principal part:

laud-āre, mon-ēre, reg-ere, cap-ere, aud-īre
 laud-ō, mon-eō, reg-ō, cap-iō, aud-iō

Note: Those verbs which change ere to iō, are placed in a separate class.

Note: In **reciting the principal parts** the 1st ps. sg. pres. ind. act. is always mentioned together with the first princ. part:

laudāre, laudō, laudāvī, laudātum, *praise*
 or laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum, *praise*

179. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM

(containing the forms derived from the present stem)

I. Verb Forms

Four present tenses

Indic. and subjunct. act. and pass.

laud-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-
ō, (ās)	eō, (ēs)	ō, (is)	iō, (is)	io (īs)
or	eor	or (eris)	ior, (eris)	ior
em , (ēs)	eam , (eās)	am (ās)	iam , (iās)	iam , (iās)
er	ear	ar	iar	iar

Four imperfect tenses:

Indic. and subjunct. act. and pass.

ābam	ēbam	ēbam	iēbam	iēbam
ābar	ēbar	ēbar	iēbar	iēbar
ārem	ērem	erem	erem	īrem
ārer	ērer	erer	erer	īrer

The 1st future indic. act. and pass.

(The 1st and 2d futures form no subjunctive)

ābō	ēbō	am (ēs)	iam (iēs)	iam (iēs)
ābor	ēbor	ar (ēris)	iar (iēris)	iar (iēris)

The imperative active (Pass. not used.)

ā	ē	e	e	ī
---	---	---	---	---

II. Noun Forms

The present infin. act. and pass.

āre	ēre	ere	ere	īre
ārī	ērī	ī	ī	īrī

The present participle active

(The pres. part. forms no passive)

āns	ēns	ēns	iēns	iēns
-----	-----	-----	------	------

The gerund and the gerundive

andī	endī	endī	iendī	iendī
andus	endus	endus	iendus	iendus

180. SYNOPSIS OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM

containing five verb-forms and one noun-form of the

Active Voice

Perfect indicative and subjunctive

Plupf. indicative and subjunctive

2d Fut. indicative (no subjunctive)

Perfect infinitive:

laudāv-, monu-, rēx-, cēp-, audīv-

ī	erim
eram	issem
erō	—
isse	

181. SYNOPSIS OF THE PARTICIPIAL SYSTEM

containing

I. Five verb-forms of the

Passive Voice:

Perfect indicative and subjunctive

Plupf. indicative and subjunctive

2d Fut. indicative (no subjunctive):

laudāt-, monit-, rēct-, capt-, audīt-

us, a, um; ī, ae, a

sum	sim
eram	essem
erō	—

II. Seven noun-forms:

Perf. participle passive: **us** etc., ī etc.

Perf. infinitive passive: um etc., ōs etc. **esse**

Fut. participle active: **ūrus** etc., ūrī etc.

Fut. infinitive active: ūsum etc., ūrōs etc. **esse**

1st and 2d supines: **um**, ū (unchangeable)

Fut. infinitive passive: um **īrī** (unchangeable)

laudāre, laudō, laudāvi, laudātum *praise*

ACTIVUM

	Indicātīvus		Coniūctīvus
Praesens	laud-ō, laud-ās, laud-at,	<i>I praise, am praising, do p. thou praisest (you praise) he (she, it) praises</i>	laud-em laud-ēs laud-et
	laud-āmus, laud-ātis, laud-ant,	<i>we praise you praise they praise</i>	laud-ēmus laud-ētis laud-ent
Imperfectum	laud-ābam, laud-ābās, laud-ābat,	<i>I was praising, praised thou wast (you were) praising he was praising</i>	laud-ārem laud-ārēs laud-āret
	laud-ābāmus, laud-ābātis, laud-ābant,	<i>we were praising you were praising they were praising</i>	laud-ārēmus laud-ārētis laud-ārent
Futūrum I.	laud-ābō, laud-ābis, laud-ābit,	<i>I shall praise you will praise he will praise</i>	
	laud-ābimus, laud-ābitis, laud-ābunt,	<i>we shall praise you will praise they will praise</i>	
Perfectum	laudāv-ī, laudāv-istī, laudāv-it,	I praised, I have praised <i>you praised he praised</i>	laudāv-erim laudāv-eris laudāv-erit
	laudāv-imus, laudāv-istis, laudāv-ērunt,	<i>we praised you praised they praised</i>	laudāv-erimus laudāv-eritis laudāv-erint

183. The subjunctive is used to express e. g.:

Cause }	cum laudem	<i>since I praise</i>
	(all ps.) } cum nōn laudem	<i>since I do not praise</i>
Result }	ut laudem	<i>(so) that I praise</i>
	(all ps.) } ut nōn laudem	<i>(so) that I do not praise</i>

CONJUGATION

laudāre, laudō, laudāvi, laudātum *praise*

PASSIVUM

Indicātivus		Coniūctivus
laud-or, laud-āris, laud-ātur,	<i>I am praised, being p'd you are praised he is praised</i>	laud-er laud-ēris laud-ētur
laud-āmur, laud-āminī, laud-antur,	<i>we are praised you are praised they are praised</i>	laud-ēmur laud-ēmini laud-entur
laud-ābar, laud-ābāris, laud-ābātur,	<i>I was (being) praised you were praised he was praised</i>	laud-ārer laud-ārēris laud-ārētur
laud-ābāmur, laud-ābāminī, laud-ābantur,	<i>we were praised you were praised they were praised</i>	laud-ārēmur laud-ārēminī laud-ārentur
laud-ābor, laud-āberis, laud-ābitur,	<i>I shall be praised you will be praised he will be praised</i>	
laud-ābimur, laud-ābiminī, laud-ābuntur,	<i>we shall be praised you will be praised they will be praised</i>	
laudāt-us sum, I was praised, have b. p., a } es, <i>you were praised</i> um } est, <i>he was praised</i>		laud-atus sim a } sīs um } sit
laudāt-ī sumus, <i>we were praised</i> ae } estis, <i>you were praised</i> a } sunt, <i>they were praised</i>		laud-ātī simus ae } sītis a } sint

Purpose \ ut laudem, (*in order*) to praise; that I praise
(all ps.) \ nē laudem, **not to p., lest** I p., that I do **not** p.

Exhortation \ laudēmus, **let us praise**
(1st pers.) \ nē laudēmus, **let us not praise**

ACTIVUM			
Indicātīvus		Coniūctīvus	
Plusquamperf.	laudāv-eram,	<i>I had praised</i>	laudāv-issem
	laudāv-erās,	<i>you had praised</i>	laudāv-issēs
	laudāv-erat,	<i>he had praised</i>	laudāv-isset
Plūsquamperf.	laudāv-erāmus,	<i>we had praised</i>	laudāv-issēmus
	laudāv-erātis,	<i>you had praised</i>	laudāv-issētis
	laudāv-erant,	<i>they had praised</i>	laudāv-issent
Fütürum I.	laudāv-erō,	<i>I shall have praised</i>	
	laudāv-eris,	<i>you will have praised</i>	
	laudāv-erit	<i>he will have praised</i>	
Fütürum I.	laudāv-erimus,	<i>he shall have praised</i>	
	laudāv-eritis,	<i>he will have praised</i>	
	laudāv-erint,	<i>they will have praised</i>	
Imperative	Pre.: laud-ā	<i>praise thou</i>	laud-āte <i>praise ye</i>
	Ft. : laud-ātō	<i>thou shalt pr.</i>	laud-ātōte <i>ye shall praise</i>
	Ft. : (laud-ātō	<i>he shall praise</i>	laud-antō <i>they shall pr.</i>
Infinitive	Pre.: laud-āre	<i>to praise</i>	
	Pf. : laud-āvisse	<i>to have praised</i>	
	Ft. : laud-ātūrum etc. esse	<i>to be about to pr.</i>	(181, II)
Participle	Pre.: laud-āns, (laudantis, 52)	<i>praising</i>	
	Pf. : —	—	
	Ft. : laudāt-ūrus, etc.	<i>about to praise</i>	(181, II)
Gerund	Nom.: (laud-āre)	<i>(praising, to praise)</i>	
	Acc. : (ad) laud-andum	<i>(to or for) praising</i>	
	Gen. : laud-andī	<i>of praising</i>	
	Dat. : laud-andō (rare);	<i>to or for praising</i>	
	Abl. : laud-andō	<i>by praising</i>	
Supine I. laudāt-um <i>in order to praise</i> (only with verbs of motion)			
Supine II. laudāt-ū <i>to praise</i> (only after fās, facilis etc.)			

185. (Tū = subject **nom.**) es puer probus
 Putō tē (subject **acc.**) esse puerum probum
I believe you to be an honest boy

CONJUGATION

PASSIVUM

Indicātīvus			Coniūctīvus		
laudāt-us	}eram, erās, erat,	<i>I had been praised</i>	laudāt-us	}essem essēs esset	
a		<i>you had been praised</i>	a		
um		<i>he had been praised</i>	um		
laudāt-ī	}erāmus, erātis, erant,	<i>we had been praised</i>	laudāt-ī	}essēmus essētis essent	
ae		<i>you had been praised</i>	ae		
a		<i>they had been pr.</i>	a		
laudāt-us	}erō, eris, erit,	<i>I shall have been pr.</i>			
a		<i>you will h. b. praised</i>			
um		<i>he will h. b. praised</i>			
laudāt-ī	}erimus, eritis, erunt,	<i>we shall h. b. praised</i>			
ae		<i>you will h. b. praised</i>			
a		<i>they will h. b. praised</i>			

Not used

I. praesentis : laudā-rī *to be praised*
 I. perfectī : laudāt-um etc., esse *to have been praised*
 I. futūrī : laudāt-**um** īrī (181, II.) *to be about to be pr.*

P. praesentis : —
 P. perfectī : laudāt-us etc. *praised, having been praised*
 P. futūrī : —

Gerun- : laud-andus etc. ⁽¹⁾(*he, she, it*) that **must be pr'd**)
dīvum ⁽²⁾**deserving to be praised**

Putō patrem laud-āre *I think (that) the father pr's*
 putō eum laud-āvisse *I think (that) he (has)praised*
 putō eum laud-āturum esse *I think (that) he will praise*
 putō puerōs laud-ārī *I think (that) the boys are p.*
 putō cōs laud-ātos esse *I think (that) they have*

Putō **mātre**m laud-ātum īrī *been praised*
I think (that) the mother
will be praised

186. Laud-āturus sum *I am about to praise*
 Laud-andus sum *I must be praised*
 Laud-andum est *One must praise (192)*

monēre, monuī, monitum *to advise*

ACTIVUM

	Indicātīvus	Coniūctīvus
Pres.	mon-eō, <i>I advise, am ad., do ad.</i>	mon-eam
	mon-ēs, <i>you advise</i>	mon-eās
	mon-et, <i>he advises</i>	mon-eat
	mon-ēmus, <i>we advise</i>	mon-eāmus
	mon-ētis, <i>you advise</i>	mon-eātis
	mon-ent, <i>they advise</i>	mon-eant
Impf.	mon-ēbam, <i>I was advising</i>	mon-ērem
Fut. I.	mon-ēbo, <i>I shall advise</i>	
Perf.	monu-ī, <i>I advised, have ad.</i>	monu-erim
Plup.	monu-eram, <i>I had advised</i>	monu-issem
Fut. II.	monu-erō, <i>I shall have adv'd</i>	

Imperative { Pre.: mon-ē *advise thou*, mon-ēte *advise ye*
 { Ft. : { mon-ētō *thou shalt adv.* mon-ētōte *ye shall ad.*
 { (mon-ētō *he shall advise* mon-entō *they shall advise*)

Infinitive { Pre.: mon-ēre *to advise*
 { Pf. : monu-isse *to have advised*
 { Ft. : monit-ūrum etc. esse *to be about to advise*

Participle { Pre.: mon-ēns (mon-entis, 52) *advising*
 { Pf. : ————
 { Ft. : monit-ūrus etc. *about to advise*

Gerund { Nom.: (mon-ēre) *(advising, to advise)*
 { Acc. : ad mon-endum *(to or for) advising*
 { Gen. : mon-endī *of advising*
 { Dat. : mon-endō *to or for advising*
 { Abl. : mon-endō *by advising*

Supine I. monit-um *in order to advise* (only with verbs of motion)

Supine II. monit-ū*to advise* (only after fās, facilis etc.)

regere, rēxī, rēctum, to rule

ACTIVUM

Indicātīvus			Coniūctīvus	
Pres.	reg-ō	<i>I rule, am ruling, do</i>	reg- am	
	reg- is	<i>you rule</i> [rule]	reg- ās	
	reg- it	<i>he rules</i>	reg- at	
	reg- imus	<i>we rule</i>	reg- āmus	
	reg- itis	<i>you rule</i>	reg- ātis	
	reg- unt	<i>they rule</i>	reg- ant	
Impf.	reg- ēbam <i>I was ruling</i>		rég- erem	
Fut. I.	<i>I shall rule</i>			
	reg- am	reg- ēmus		
	reg- ēs	reg- ētis		
	reg- et	reg- ent		
Perf.	rēx- ī	<i>I ruled, have ruled</i>	rēx- erim	
Plup.	rēx- eram	<i>I had ruled</i>	rēx- issem	
Fut. II.	rēx- erō	<i>I shall have ruled</i>		

Impera- tive	{	Pre.: reg- e	<i>rule thou,</i>	rég- ite	<i>rule ye</i>
		Ft. : { rég- itō	<i>thou shalt rule</i>	reg- itōte	<i>ye shall rule</i>
		(reg- itō	<i>he shall rule</i>	reg- untō	<i>they shall rule</i>)

Infini- tive	{	Pre.: rég- ere	<i>to rule</i>
		Pf. : rēx- isse	<i>to have ruled</i>
		Ft. : rēct- ūrum etc. esse	<i>to be about to rule</i>

Parti- ciple	{	Pre.: reg- ēns (reg- entis, 52)	<i>ruling</i>
		Pf. : _____	_____
		Ft. : rēct- ūrus etc.	<i>about to rule</i>

Ger- und	{	Nom.: (reg- ere)	<i>(ruling, to rule)</i>
		Acc. : (ad) reg- endum	<i>(to or for) ruling</i>
		Gen. : reg- endī	<i>of ruling</i>
		Dat. : reg- endō	<i>to or for ruling</i>
		Abl. : reg- endō	<i>by ruling</i>

Supine I. rēct- um <i>in order to rule</i> (only with verbs of motion)	
Supine II. rēct- ū <i>to rule</i> (only after fās, facilis etc.)	

CONJUGATION

regere, rēxi, rēctum *to rule*

PASSIVUM

Indicātīvus	Coniūctīvus
reg-or <i>I am ruled</i> rég-eris reg-itur reg-imur reg-iminī reg-untur	reg-ar reg-āris reg-ātur reg-āmur reg-āminī reg-antur
regēbar <i>I was (being) ruled</i>	rég-erer
<i>I shall be ruled</i> reg-ar reg-eris reg-ētur	reg-ēmur reg-ēminī reg-entur
rēct-us sum <i>I was ruled</i>	rēct-us sim
rēct-us eram <i>I had been ruled</i>	rēct-us essem
rēct-us erō <i>I shall have been ruled</i>	

Not used

reg-ī	<i>to be ruled</i>
rēct-um etc. esse	<i>to have been ruled</i>
rēct-um īrī (unchangeable)	<i>to be about to be ruled</i>

—	—
rēct-us etc.	<i>ruled, having been ruled</i>
—	—

Gerun- regendus etc. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} {}^1(\text{he, she, it}) \text{ that } \mathbf{must} \text{ be ruled;} \\ \mathbf{dīvum} \quad \quad \quad {}^2 \text{deserving to be ruled} \end{array} \right.$

Note : The forms of regere in the indicative and subjunctive, except those of the *present* and *future* tenses, resemble the corresponding forms of laudāre (179-181; 176)

reg-ē, reg-e, rēx-, rēct- taking the place
of laud-ā laudāv- laudāt- (the endings being alike).

audīre, audīvī, audītum *to hear*

ACTIVUM

	Indicātīvus	Coniūctīvus
Pres.	and-iō <i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i>	aud-iam
	aud-īs <i>you hear</i>	aud-iās
	aud-it <i>he hears</i>	aud-iat
	aud-imus <i>we hear</i>	aud-iāmus
	aud-itis <i>you hear</i>	aud-iātis
	aud-iunt <i>they hear</i>	aud-iant
Impf.	aud-iēbam <i>I was hearing</i>	aud-irem
Fut. I.	<i>I shall hear</i>	
	aud-iam audiēmus	
	aud-iēs audiētis	
	aud-iet audient	
Perf.	audīv-ī <i>I heard, have h.</i>	audīv-erim
Plup.	audīv-eram <i>I have heard</i>	audīv-issem
Fut. II	audīv-erō <i>I shall have h.</i>	
Imperative	{ Pre.: aud-ī <i>hear thou</i> aud-īte <i>hear ye</i> { Ft. : aud-ītō <i>thou shalt h.</i> aud-ītōte <i>ye shall hear</i> { Ft. : aud-ītō <i>he shall hear</i> aud-iuntō <i>they shall hear</i>	
Infinitive	{ Pre.: aud-īre <i>to hear</i> { Pf. : audīv-isse etc. <i>to have heard</i> { Ft. : audīt-ūrum esse <i>to be about to hear</i>	
Participle	{ Pre.: aud-iēns, (audientes, 52) <i>hearing</i> { Pf. : — <i>—</i> { Ft. : audīt-ūrus, etc. <i>about to hear</i>	
Gerundive	{ Nom.: (aud-īre) <i>(hearing, to hear)</i> { Acc. : (ad) aud-iendum <i>(to or for) hearing</i> { Gen. : aud-iendī <i>of hearing</i> { Dat. : aud-iendō <i>to or for hearing</i> { Abl. : aud-iendō <i>by hearing</i>	
Supine I.	audīt-um <i>in order to hear</i> (only with verbs of motion)	
Supine II.	audīt-ū <i>.....to hear</i> (only after fās, facilis etc.)	

CONJUGATION

audire, audīvī, audītum to hear

PASSIVUM

Indicātīvus		Coniūctīvus
aud-ior	<i>I am heard</i>	aud-iar
aud-īris		aud-iāris
aud-ītur		aud-iātur
aud-īmur		aud-iāmur
aud-īminī		aud-iāminī
aud-iuntur		aud-iantur
aud-iēbar	<i>I was (being) heard</i>	aud-irer
	<i>I shall be heard</i>	
aud-iar	aud-iēmur	
aud-iēris	aud-iēminī	
aud-iētur	aud-ientur	
audīt-us sum	<i>I was (have been) heard</i>	audīt-us sim
audīt-us eram	<i>I had been h.</i>	audīt-us essem
audīt-us erō	<i>I shall have b. h.</i>	
Not used		
aud-īrī		<i>to be heard</i>
audīt-um esse		<i>to have been heard</i>
audīt-um īrī (unchangeable)		<i>to be about to be heard</i>
—		—
audīt-us etc.		<i>heard, having been h.</i>
—		—
Gerundivum : audiendus etc. { ¹ (he, she, it) that must be h. { ² deserving to be heard		

Note: The forms of audire in the indicative and subjunctive *except* those of the *present* and *future* tenses, resemble the corresponding forms of laudāre (179-181; 176),

audiē-, audī-, audīv-, audīt-, taking the place
of laudā laudāv laudāt (the endings being alike.)

190. VERBS OF THE 3d CONJUGATION IN IO AND IOR

capere, capiō, cēpī, captum, to take				
Activum			Passivum	
	Indicātīvus	Coniūctīv.	Indicātīvus	Coniūctīv.
Praes.	cap-iō	cap-iam	cap-ior	cap-iar
	cap-is	cap-iās	cap-eris	cap-iāris
	cap-it	cap-iat	cap-itur	cap-iātur
	cap-imus	cap-iāmus	cap-imur	cap-iāmur
	cap-itis	cap-iātis	cap-iminī	cap-iāminī
	cap-iunt	cap-iant	cap-iuntur	cap-iantur
Impf.	cap-iēbam	cap-erem	cap-iēbar	cap-erer
Fut. I.	cap-iam cap-iēs		cap-iar cap-iēris	
Impe- rat.	{ Praes. cap-e , cap-ite Fūt. { cap-itō, cap-itōte (cap-itō, cap-iuntō)	<i>not used</i>		
Infini- tivus	{ Praes. cap-ere Perf. cēp-isse Fūt. capt-ūrum etc. esse	cap-ī capt-um etc. esse capt-um irī		
Parti- cipium	{ Praes. cap-iēns (ientis, 52) Perf. — Fūt. capt-ūrus	— capt-us —		
Gerundium	(ad) cap-iendum	Gerundivum: cap-iendus, a, um		

Note: In every form of the present system (179) the final consonant of the stem is immediately followed by **one i**, **except** in the present passive form *caperis*

all imperf. subj. forms	<i>caperem, caperer, etc.</i>
the imperative form	<i>cape</i>
the infinitive form	<i>capere</i>

The perfect and participial systems are regular (180, 181):

cēp-ī,	cēp-eram,	cēp-erō etc.
capt-us,	capt-ūrus,	capt-um etc.

191.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The **active** periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the participle in **urus** with the verb **sum**, and denotes an action which is imminent, or **about to** take place.

The **passive** periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive in **ndus** with the verb **sum**, and denotes an action which is necessary, or **must** take place.

Coniugātiō periphrastica āctīva		
Indic.	laudātūrus sum (eram...)	<i>I am (was..) about to praise</i>
Coni.	laudātūrus sim (essem...)	
Infin.	{ laudātūrum etc. esse	<i>to be about to praise</i>
	{ laudātūrum etc. fuisse	<i>to have been about to praise</i>
Coniugātiō periphrastica passīva		
Indic.	{ laudandus sum	{ <i>I am to be, must be pr.</i>
	{ laudandus eram	{ <i>I ought to be, deserve</i>
	{ laudandus erō	<i>I was to be, had.., deserved...</i> <i>I shall deserve to be praised</i>
Coni.	laudandus sim (essem...)	
Infin.	{ laudandum etc. esse	{ <i>to deserve to be praised</i>
	{ laudandum etc. fuisse	{ <i>to be such as is to be praised</i> <i>to have deserved to be pr.</i>

192. Note: 1. A "periphrastic" form is a "round about way of speaking."

2. The subjunctives in **ūrus sūm** supply the wanting *subjunctives* of the **fūtūrum I**.

3. **Transitive** verbs have **all** forms of the gerundive: **us, a, um; ī, ae, a;** **intransitive** verbs have **only** the neuter sg. in **um** (with **est**).

The **doer** of the action expressed by the gerundive is put in the **dative**, except, when it has an object-dative:

Puer **mihi** laudandus est { *The boy must be praised by me,*
 { i. e.: *I must praise the boy*

litterae eī scribendae sunt *he must write a letter*

cōnātū dēsistendum est *the attempt must be given up*

lēgī ā tē parendum est *you must obey the law*

laudandum nōn est { *it is necessary not to praise*
 { *it is imprudent, unlawful to praise*

193. VERBA DEPONENTIA: DEPONENTS

Deponents are verbs which have “put aside” (dēpōnere) the active forms that they formerly had.

hortārī, hortātus sum, to exhort			
Indicātīvus			Coniūctīvus
Praes.	hortor hortāris etc.	<i>I exhort you exhort</i>	hortēr hortēris etc.
Impf.	hortābar	<i>I was exhorting</i>	hortārer
Fūt. I.	hortābor	<i>I shall exhort</i>	—
Perf.	hortātus sum	<i>I exhorted, have e.</i>	hortātus sim
Plūp.	hortātus eram	<i>I had exhorted</i>	hortātus essem
Fūt. II.	hortātus erō	<i>I shall have exh.</i>	—
Imperāt perf. “ fūt.	hortāre <i>exhort thou</i> hortāminī <i>exhort ye</i> not used		
Infīn. praes.	hortārī	<i>to exhort</i>	
Infīn. perf.	hortātum etc. esse	<i>to have exhorted</i>	
Infīn. fūt.	hortātūrum etc. esse	<i>to be about to exhort</i>	
Partic. praes.	hortāns (antis, 52)	<i>exhorting</i>	
Partic. perf.	hortātus etc.	having exhorted	
Partic. fūt.	hortātūrus etc.	<i>about to exhort</i>	
Gerundium	ad hortandum.....	<i>to or for exhorting</i>	
Gerundivum	hortandus etc	(he etc.) that must be exhorted	
Supīnum I.	hortātum,	<i>in order to exhort</i>	
Supīnum II.	hortātū	<i>.....to exhort</i>	

194. The deponents have the following **forms**:

- 1) **all passive** forms, except the infinitive in īrī;
- 2) **some active** forms:

the future infinitive	: hortātūrum esse
the pres. and fut. participles	: hortāns, hortātūrus
the gerund	: ad hortandum.....
the supines	: hortātum, hortātū

195. All forms of the deponents have **active meaning** except the **gerundive** which has **passive meaning**.

196. DEPONENTS OF THE 2d, 3d AND 4th CONJUGATIONS.

II. verērī, veritus sum, *feel awe of*
Imperative: verēre, verēminī (193)

III. sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
Present : sequor, sequeris
Imperative: séquere, sequiminī

patī, passus sum, *suffer*
Present : patior, pateris
Imperative: pátere, patiminī

IV. partīrī, partitus sum *share*
Imperative: partīre, partīminī

197. PASSIVE OF DEPONENTS

The passive of deponents is supplied by synonymous expressions or circumlocutions, e. g.:

Active		Passive
hortārī,	admīrārī	monērī, laudārī
sūspicārī,	<i>suspect</i>	in sūspiciōnem vocārī
oblīvīscī,	<i>forget</i>	obliviōne obruī
aggredi,	<i>attack</i>	fit impetus in hostēs
admīrārī,	<i>admire</i>	{ rēs admīrātiōnem habet
		{ rēs admīrātiōnī est
		{ reī admīrātiō est

Note: Some perfect participles of deponents are both active and passive in meaning; when passive, they are not employed to form tenses:

Passive meaning

pater filiō comitātus	<i>accompanied by his son</i>
exercitus partītus	<i>divided army</i>
agrī dēpopulātī	<i>devastated lands</i>
scelus meditātum	<i>premeditated crime</i>
malā opīnāta	<i>imagined evils</i>

198. SEMIDEPONENTIA: SEMIDEPONENTS

Semideponents have only some passive forms with active meaning, either in the perfect or in the present system:

a. Solēre	solitus sum	<i>to be wont</i>	S. dicere
audēre	ausus sum	<i>venture</i>	Au. dicere
gaudēre	gāvīsus sum	<i>rejoice</i>	G. libertāte
fīdere	fīsus sum	{ <i>rely on</i> <i>trust</i>	{ Tibi, virtūtī or virtūte
cōnfīdere	cōnfīsus sum		
diffīdere	diffīsus sum	<i>distrust</i>	Tibi, virtūtī
b. Merērī	{ meruī meritus sum	<i>deserve</i>	Bene dē tē m.
pacīsci	{ pepigī pāctus sum	<i>make a contract</i>	Rem p.
revertī	revertī	<i>return</i>	Reversūrus
dēverti	dēvertī	<i>lodge</i>	Dēversūrus

Note : 1. Reversus, *having returned*
 2. { gāvīsus, fīsus, diffīsus
 { *rejoicing, trusting, distrusting*

Soleō, audeō, gaudeō

Fidō, cōnfidō, diffidō:

Then mereor, pacīscor,

Revertor and dēvertor.

199. PASSIVE PARTICIPLES WITH ACTIVE MEANING

Cēnātus,	<i>having dined;</i>	<i>after dinner</i>
prānsus,	<i>having breakfasted;</i>	<i>after breakfast</i>
iūrātus,	<i>having sworn;</i>	(also pass.: <i>sworn</i>)
pōtus,	<i>having drunk;</i>	(also pass.: <i>drunk</i>)

200. PASSIVE PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES ONLY

adultus,	<i>grown up</i>	nūpta,	<i>married</i>
assuētus,	<i>accustomed</i>	obsolētus,	<i>worn out, obsolete</i>
inveterātus,	<i>deep-rooted</i>	praeteritus,	<i>past</i>
	error inveterātus,		<i>a deep-rooted error</i>
	annus praeteritus,		<i>the past year</i>

201. NEUTRALIA PASSIVA: NEUTRAL PASSIVE VERBS

Fierī, perīre, vērīre are active in form and apparently passive in meaning (234, 237).

PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION

202. a. The ending **re** is used instead of **ris** in the 2d ps. sg. of the **passive** and the **deponent**; when no ambiguity arises:

laudāris, laudēris, laudābāris, laudārēris, laudāberis

— *laudēre, laudābāre, laudārēre, laudābere*

hortāris, hortēre, hortābāre, hortārēre, hortābere

b. In the perfect system

vi is dropped before **s**,

laudāsse -āssem -āstī,

dēlēsse -ēssem -ēstī,

cognōsse -ōssem -ōstī,

audīsse -īssem -īstī,

ve and **v** before **r**,

-ārunt -ārim -āram -ārō

-ērunt -ērim -ēram -ērō

-ōrunt -ōrim -ōram -ōrō

-iērunt -ierim -ieram -ierō

Note: *Lavāre, iuvāre, cavēre* retain the **v** of their stems.

Note: *Ere* is sometimes used instead of *ērunt*:

laudavēre - laudāvērunt

203. The present imperatives of *dīcere, dūcere, facere, ferre* drop the *e*: *dīc, dūc, fac, fer*; also their compounds, except those of *facere*:

(*maledīc*), *ēdūc, éffer* (8, c)

éffice, intérfice, calfáce (8, c)

204. The future imperative (*laudātō, laudantō*) is found in laws and with poets only; in classical prose the present subjunctive is used instead:

laudet, laudent, he, they shall praise

Exception: Of *scīre* only *scītō* and *scītōte* are used as imperatives.

205.

LIST OF VERBS

The verbs of each conjugation are classified chiefly according to the different formations of the perfects:

1. Perfects formed by v, u, s;
2. Perfects formed by reduplication;
3. Perfects formed by lengthening or ablaut of the root-vowel;
4. Perfects without apparent change of stem.

Note: a. It will prove useful to recite all the **three systems** (179-181), e, g.:

sectus, sectum esse
sectūrus, sectūrum esse
sectum, sectum īrī

or the groups of infinitives, participles etc.:

e. g.:	<i>praising</i>	laudāns
	<i>being praised</i>	wanting
	<i>having praised</i>	wanting
	<i>(having been) praised</i>	laudātus
	<i>about to praise</i>	laudātūrus
	<i>one that must be praised</i>	laudandus

b. Before enumerating the passive forms of a verb, state whether it is transitive, forming a complete passive as **laudor, laudaris, laudatur**

or intransitive, forming an impersonal passive only, as **saltātur**, *there is dancing*

206.

FIRST CONJUGATION

Like laudāre:

conclāmāre	<i>shout</i>	collocāre	<i>place</i>
commūtāre	<i>change</i>	commemorāre	<i>mention</i>
dēclārāre	<i>make clear</i>	dissipāre	<i>disperse</i>
dēclināre	<i>turn aside</i>	explicāre	<i>unfold</i>
dēfatigāre	<i>tire</i>	flāgitāre	<i>entreat</i>
explōrāre	<i>explore</i>	nāvigāre	<i>(set) sail</i>
ignōrāre	<i>not know</i>	occupāre	<i>seize</i>
salūtāre	<i>greet</i>	renovāre	<i>renew</i>
conclāmō		cólllocō	

FIRST CONJUGATION: āre, ō

Perfect formed by v

pōtāre	pōtāvī	pōtum	<i>drink, tope</i>
--------	--------	-------	--------------------

See potus: 199.

Perfects formed by u

cubāre	cubūī	cubitum	<i>recline</i>
domāre	domūī	domitum	<i>tame</i>
vetāre	vetūī	vétitum	<i>forbid</i>
⁵ increpāre	-crepūī	-crepitum	<i>rebuke</i>
secāre	secūī	sectum	<i>cut</i>
micāre	micūī	—(177,n.)	{ <i>gleam</i> <i>quiver</i>
dimicāre	-micāvī	-micātum	<i>fight</i>
sonāre	sonūī	—	<i>sound</i>
¹⁰ tonāre	tonūī	—	<i>thunder</i>

Excubare

(keep) watch

Veto **te scribere**Desecare, *cut off*Resonare, *resound*

Perfects formed by Reduplication

dare	dedī	datum	<i>give</i>
------	------	-------	-------------

Do **tibi** librum

Only dā, dās, dāns have ā

circūmdare	-dedī	-datum	<i>surround</i>
------------	-------	--------	-----------------

The other compounds of dare belong to
the 3d Conjugation

stāre	stetī	stātūrus	<i>stand</i>
circumstāre	-stetī	—	<i>stand around</i>
¹⁵ praestāre	-stitī	-stātūrus	{ <i>excel</i> <i>vouch for</i> <i>fulfil</i>
cōnstāre	-stitī	-stātūrus	{ <i>consist</i> <i>cost</i>
dīstāre	—	—	<i>be distant</i>

Te circumstant

Tibi virtute p.

Te, aliquid p.

Officium p.

Constamus ex
animo et corpore

Perfects formed by Lengthening of Vowel

iuvāre	iūvī	(iūtum)	<i>help</i>
adiuvāre,	-iūvī	adiūtum	<i>help</i>
²⁰ lavāre	lāvī	lautum	<i>wash</i>

luvo **te**Lauta suppellex
splendid furniture

SECOND CONJUGATION: ēre, eō

Perfects formed by v

dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum	<i>destroy</i>
flēre	flēvī	fletum	<i>weep</i>
deflere	-flevi	-fletum	<i>weep over</i>
nēre	nēvī	nētum	<i>spin</i>
²⁵ complēre	-plēvī	-plētum	<i>fill up</i>
ciēre	(cīvī)	(cītum)	<i>rouse</i>
accīre	accīvī	accītum	<i>summon</i>

Mortem patris
defleo.

Percitus,
greatly roused

Perfects formed by u

arcēre	arcuī	—	<i>keep off (tr.)</i>
coercere	coercui	coercitum	<i>curb</i>
³⁰ exercere	exercui	exercitum	<i>vex, harass</i>
exercere	exercui	exercitatum	<i>train</i>
habēre	habuī	habitum	<i>have</i>
adhibere	-hibui	-hibitum	<i>use (ad)</i>
prohibere	-hibui	-hibitum	<i>keep off (tr.)</i>
³⁵ debere	debui	debitum	<i>owe, ought</i>
praebere	praebui	praebitum	<i>offer, grant</i>
admonēre	-monuī	-monitum	<i>{admonish remind</i>
nocēre	nocuī	nocitum	<i>harm</i>
placēre	placuī	placitum	<i>please</i>
⁴⁰ displicere	-plicui	-plicitum	<i>displease</i>
tacere	tacui	tacitum	<i>be silent</i>
reticēre	-ticui	—	<i>conceal</i>
terrēre	terruī	territum	<i>frighten</i>
detertere	-terrui	-territum	<i>deter</i>
⁴⁵ cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsu	<i>estimate</i>
suscēnsēre	-cēnsuī	—	<i>be angry</i>
docēre	docuī	doctum	<i>teach</i>
miscēre	miscuī	mixtum	<i>mix</i>
tenēre	tenuī	—	<i>hold</i>
⁵⁰ abstinēre	-tinuī	—	<i>abstain</i>
continere	-tinui	—	<i>hold together</i>
pertinere	-tinui	—	<i>extend (i.)</i>
detinere	-tinui	-tentum	<i>detain</i>
distinere	-tinui	-tentum	<i>divide, busy</i>
⁵⁵ obtinere	-tinui	-tentum	<i>maintain, hold</i>
retinere	-tinui	-tentum	<i>retain</i>
sustinere	-tinui	-tentatum	<i>endure</i>

Tecto me arcuisti

Te amicum h.,
*have a friend
in you*

Finibus proh.,
*keep out of the
country*

De proelio te a.

Noceo **tibi**

Placeo **tibi**

Tacitus, *silent*

A proposito d.,
d. from a plan

Tibi suscenseo

Passive of doc.
is discere.

(Ab) iniuria a.

Ad mare pert.

Regnum obtinet

SECOND CONJUGATION: ēre, eō

carēre	caruī	caritūrus	<i>be without</i>	Dolore caret
dolēre	doluī	dolitūrus	<i>feel pain</i>	Oculi mihi d.
⁶⁰ pārēre	pāruī	pāritūrus	<i>obey</i>	Patri pareo
apparere	- parui	- pariturus	<i>appear</i>	
valēre	valuī	valitūrus	<i>be strong</i>	Multum valet <i>has great influence</i>
calēre	caluī	— (177, n.)	be warm	Aestuarē, feel w.
egēre	eguī	—	<i>need</i>	Eget cibo
⁶⁵ indigere	indigui	—	<i>need</i>	Indiget cibi
ēminēre	ēminuī	—	<i>stand out</i>	
flōrēre	flōruī	—	<i>bloom</i>	
horrēre	horruī	—	<i>shudder at</i>	Minas eius h.
iacēre	iacuī	—	<i>lie</i>	In lecto iacet; but urbs (po) sita est in monte
⁷⁰ latēre	latuī	—	<i>be hidden</i>	
nitēre	nitui	—	<i>shine</i>	
olēre	oluī	—	<i>smell of (i.)</i>	Malitiam olet
patēre	patuī	—	<i>stand open</i>	
silēre	silui	—	<i>be silent</i>	
⁷⁵ studēre	studui	—	<i>take pains about</i>	Scire studeo
stupēre	stupui	—	<i>be astounded</i>	litteris, tibi studeo
timēre	timui	—	<i>fear</i>	Timeo, ne (non) <i>I fear that (not)</i>
vigēre	vigui	—	<i>be vigorous</i>	
avēre	—	—	<i>long for</i>	
⁸⁰ cōnīvēre	—	—	<i>half close the eyes</i>	
frīgēre	—	—	<i>be cold</i>	
imminēre	—	—	<i>hang over</i>	Mors tibi i.
maerēre	—	—	<i>mourn</i>	Re, rem maereo,
pollēre	—	—	<i>be potent</i>	re, rem doleo
⁸⁵ splendēre	—	—	<i>shine</i>	

Perfects formed by s

augēre	auxī	auctum	<i>increase (tr.)</i>	Rem augere
torquēre	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i> <i>torture</i>	
abstergēre	tersi	- tersum	<i>wipe off</i>	
iubēre	iussi	iussum	<i>order</i>	Te scribere iubeo
⁹⁰ permulcēre	mulsi	- mulsum	<i>soothe</i>	
rīdēre	rīsī	rīsum	<i>laugh (at)</i>	Te rideo
arridere	- risi	- risum	<i>smile at</i>	Tibi arrideo
irridere	- risi	- risum	<i>laugh at</i>	Te irrideo

SECOND CONJUGATION: ēre, eō

suādēre	suāsī	suāsum	<i>advise</i>	Suadeo tibi ut P. tibi (a. c. i.) P. tibi, ut . . .
⁹⁵ persuādēre	suasī	-suāsum	{ <i>convince</i> <i>induce</i> }	
ārdēre	ārsī	ārsūrus	<i>be on fire</i>	
haerēre	haesī	haesūrus	<i>stick (i.)</i>	Tibi indulges
manēre	mānsī	mānsūrus	<i>remain</i>	
algēre	alsī	—	<i>feel cold</i>	
¹⁰⁰ fulgēre	fulsī	—	<i>flash</i>	Mortem eius l.
indulgēre	indulsī	—	<i>am indulgent</i>	
urgēre	ursī	impulsum	<i>urge, press</i>	
lūcēre	lūxī	—	<i>be light, beam</i>	
lūgēre	lūxī	—	<i>mourn, bewail</i>	

Perfects formed by Reduplication

¹⁰⁵ mordēre	momordī	morsum	<i>bite</i>	Sponsus, a; <i>bridegroom, bride</i> Respondeo tibi
spondēre	spopondī	spōnsum	<i>promise</i>	
respondēre	respondī	respōnsum	<i>answer</i>	
tondēre	totōndī	tōnsum	<i>clip; shave</i>	A cruce pendet; ex te pendet, <i>it depends on you</i> Bellum impendet
detondere	detondi	detonsum	<i>clipp off</i>	
¹¹⁰ pendēre	pependī	—	<i>hang (intr.)</i>	
impendēre	—	—	{ <i>overhang</i> <i>threaten (i.)</i> }	

Perfects formed by Lengthening of Vowel

cavēre	cāvī	cautum	{ <i>beware</i> <i>take care of</i> }	Id, eum cave Fratri cave
favēre	fāvī	fautum	<i>favor</i>	
fovēre	fōvī	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>	Tibi faveo
¹¹⁵ movēre	mōvī	mōtum	<i>move (tr.)</i>	
vovēre	vōvī	vōtum	<i>vow</i>	Commovere, per- move, <i>stir (tr.)</i>
sedēre	sēdī	sessum	<i>sit</i>	
circumsedere	-sedi	-sessum	<i>invest</i>	Urbem c. Labore s.
snpersedere	-sedi	-sessum	<i>refrain</i>	
¹²⁰ obsidere	-sedi	-sessum	<i>besiege</i>	Eius virtuti i. Futura prov. Tibi provide
possidere	-sedi	-sessum	<i>possess</i>	
vidēre	vīdī	vīsum	<i>see</i>	
invidere	-vidi	-visum	{ <i>envy</i> <i>foresee</i> <i>provide</i> }	
providere	-vidi	-visum		

Without apparent change of Stem

¹²⁵ prandēre	prandī	prānsum	<i>breakfast</i>
-------------------------	--------	---------	------------------

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ̄o

Perfect formed by v

sternere	strāvī	strātum	cover over
prōsternere	-strāvī	-strātum	prostrate
cernere	—	—	discern
dēcernere	dēcrēvī	dēcrētum	decree
¹³⁰ spernere	sprēvī	sprētum	spurn
oblinere	oblēvī	óblitum	daub over
se-rere	sēvī	satum	sow, plant
conserere	-sevi	-situm	sow with
inserere	-sevi	-situm	implant
¹⁸⁵ sinere	sīvī	situm	let, allow
dēsinere	{ dēstiti dēsī	-situm	cease (220, 1)
petere	petīvī	petitum	seek to obtain
quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesitum	{ seek, look for ask
conquīrere	-quīsīvī	-quīsītum	go in quest of
¹⁴⁰ terere	trīvī	trītum	rub
arcessere	arcessīvī	arcessītum	{ summon
accersere	accersīvī	accersītum	{ send for
capessere	capessīvī	capessītum	seize eagerly
lacessere	lacessīvī	lacessītum	provoke

Perfects formed by u

¹⁴⁵ incumbere	incubūī	incubitum	lay one's self upon
prōcumbere	-cubūī	-cubitum	prostrate one's sf.
gi-gnere	genuī	genitum	beget
pōnere	posuī	positum	{ place, lay set, put
anteponere	-posui	-positu	prefer
¹⁵⁰ exponere	-posui	-positum	{ set on shore explain
imponere	-posui	-positum	place upon
alere	aluī	altum	nourish
colere	coluī	cultum	{ cultivate honor
excolere	-coluī	-cultum....	perfect
¹⁵⁵ incolere	-coluī	—	inhabit

Viam silice st.
Consternere, cover

Senatus res d.

Ager consitus est
Insitus, inborn

Te ire sino

Timere desino

A te peto; **ut**.....
Ducem quaero

**A te, ex te
quaero, quis sis**

Tempus contero,
spend, waste t.
Iter tritum
a beaten way;

Proverbium con-
tritum, trite pr.
Re l., prov. to

In id studium
in quo es, i'e
Tibi ad pedes p.

Statuam in aede
pono

Te mihi antep.

Eos e navi exp.
Causam exp.

Tibi onus imp.

Almus, genial;
Alma mater
Agrum, virtutem c.
Deum, homines c.

Incultus, untilled

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

cōnsulere	cōnsulūi	cōnsultum	<i>consult</i>
cōnserere	consērūi	cōnser̄tum	<i>join, fit</i>
dēserere	-serūi	-sertum	<i>desert</i>
disserere	-serūi	disputātum	<i>discourse</i>
¹⁶⁰ īnserere	-serūi	-sertum	<i>insert, put into</i>
texere	texūi	textum	<i>weave</i>
molere	molui	molitum	<i>grind</i>
vomere	vomui	vomitum	<i>throw up</i>
fremere	fremui	—	<i>growl</i>
²⁶⁵ gemere	gemui	—	<i>groan, sigh</i>
strepere	strepui	—	<i>rumble</i>
tremere	tremui	—	<i>tremble</i>

Tibi consulo.
take care of you
Manus conserere
join battle

Disertus, skilful
in speaking,
(less than eloquens)

Perfects formed by s

coquere	co xī	coctum	<i>cook</i>
concoquere	-coxī	-coctum	<i>digest</i>
¹⁷⁰ dicere	dixī	dictum	<i>say (203)</i>
indicare	-dixī	-dictum	<i>announce</i>
indicāre	-dicāvī	-dicātum	<i>point out</i>
praedicere	-dixī	-dictum	<i>fortell</i>
praedicāre	-dicāvī	-dicātum	<i>proclaim</i>
¹⁷⁵ dūcere	dūxī	ductum	<i>lead (203)</i>
condūcere	-dūxī	-ductum	<i>hire, rent</i>
ēdūcere	-dūxī	-ductum	<i>lead forth</i>
ēducāre	-ducāvī	-ducātum	<i>bring up</i>
affligere	afflīxī	afflictum	{ <i>strike down</i>
¹⁸⁰ prōfligāre	-flīgāvī	-flīgātum	{ <i>to the ground</i>
cōnfligere	-flīxī	-flīctum	<i>be in combat</i>
regere	rēxī	rēctum	<i>guide, rule</i>
corrigere	corrēxī	-rēctum	<i>improve</i>
dērigere	dērēxī	-rēctum	{ <i>set straight</i> <i>direct</i>
¹⁸⁵ porrigere	porrēxī	-rēctum	<i>hold forth, offer</i>
pergere	perrēxī	-rēctum	<i>proceed (to go)</i>
surgere	surrēxī	-rēctum	<i>rise, stand up</i>
tegere	tēxī	tēctum	<i>cover</i>
trahere	trāxī	-trāctum	<i>draw, haul</i>

Dic ei, quis sis

Bellum indicere,
declare war;
diem indicere,
appoint a day

Inducere,
lead in, move to
Producere,
lead before

Se subducere,
withdraw

Cum hoste c.
Rectus, straight

Aciem d., draw up
in battle array

Tibi dexteram p.
Eadem via perge
De lecto s.
Protegere, protect

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

190	vehere	vexī	vectum	carry	
	vehī	vectus	sum	be carried	Equo vehi, ride
	cingere	cīnxī	cīnctum	gird	
	tingere	tīnxī	tīnctum	dye, tinge	
	iungere	iūnxī	iūnctum	join, connect	Me vobis iungo, I join you
195	coniungere	-iūnxī	-iūnctum	join together	
	disiungere	-iūnxi	-iūnctum	disjoin, part	
	ingere	fīnxī	fictum	form, mould	Fictus, fictitious: ficti di.
	pingere	pīnxī	pictum	paint	
	stringere	strīnxī	strictum	{graze strip off	Gladium destr., draw the sword
200	figere	fīxī	fīxum	fix, fasten	In terra f.
	dēmergere,	-mersī	-mersum	dip, sink (tr.)	Me d., I dive
	dēmergor	dēmersus	sum	sink (intr.)	
	ēmergō	ēmersī	-mersum	emerge (usu. i.)	
	spargere	sparsī	sparsum	strew, throw about	Dispergere milites, scatter the soldiers
205	aspergere	-spersī	-spersum	besprinkle	
	flectere	flexī	flexum	bend (trans.)	Deflectere, turn aside (tr. & i.)
	cōnectere	(-nexuī)	-nexum	tie together	
	nūbere	nūpsī	nūptum	marry	Nupta, married; nubo, veil myself for.....
		fīlia alicuī	nūbit		
		fīlius aliquam virginem	dūcit		
	scrībere	scrīpsī	scrīptum	write	Ad te scribo Proscr., outlaw
210	cōnscribere	-scripsī	-scrīptum	levy, enroll	
	carpere	carpsī	carptum	pluck; carp at	
	dēcerpere	-cerpsī	-cerptum	pluck off	
	scalpere	scalpsī	scalptum	engrave	(of surface work)
	īnsculpere	-sculpsī	-sculptum	chisel, carve in	(of deeper work)
215	irrēpere	irrēpsī	—	creep in	
	serpere	serpsī	—	creep	
	contemnere	-tempstī	-temptum	value little	
	gerere	gessī	gestum	carry on	Bellum gerere wage war
	digerere	-gessī	-gestum	arrange	Res gestae, ex- ploits
220	combūrere	combussī	combustum	burn up (tr.)	Deflagrare, burn down (intr.)
	ambūrere	ambussī	ambustum	scorch	

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ̄o

premere	pressī	pressum	press	
exprimere	-pressī	-pressum	{press out express	
opprimere	-pressī	-pressum	bear down	
225 cēdere	cessī	cessum	give place to	Tibi cedo
accēdere	-cessī	-cessum	approach	Ad te accedo
claudere	clausī	clausum	close	Concludere, en- close, end, infer
inclūdere	-clūsī	-clūsū	shut up	
interclūdere	-clūsī	-clūsū	shut off, cut off	Tibi commeata i., cut off supplies
230 dīvidere	dīvīsī	dīvīsum	separate, divide	
laedere	laesī	laesum	trouble; offend	Fidem laedere, break one's word
allīdere	-līsī	-līsū	dash against	
lūdere	lūsī	lūsū	play	Illudo tibi - eludo te, jeer at you
ēlūdere	-lūsī	-lūsū	elude, mock	
235 plaudere	plausī	plausum	applaud	Tibi plaudo
explōdere	-plōsī	-plōsum	hoot off	Te explodo
rādere	rāsī	rāsū	scrape, shave	
rōdere	rōsī	rōsum	gnaw	
trūdere	trūsī	trūsū	thrust, shove	
240 invadere	-vāsī	-vāsū	invade	In bona tua, in te
ēvādere	-vāsī	-vāsū	escape, become	Is non potest
vadere	—	—	go (rapidly)	orator evadere
mittere	mīsī	missum	send	De-, let down
āmittere	-mīsī	-missum	lose (by accident)	
245 committere	-mīsī	-missum	intrust	Proelium c. engage in battle
dīmittere	-mīsī	-missum	dismiss	
metere	secūī	messum	mow, reap	
dēmetere	dēsecūī	dēmessum	cut off, reap	

Perfects formed by Reduplication

cadere	cēcidi	cāsūrus	fall (intr.)	Animo cadere, lose courage
250 incidere	incidī	(incāsūrus)	fall into	
occidere	occidi	occāsūrus	go down, die	
recidere	réccidi	recāsūrus	fall back	Suspicio in te r.
concidere	concidi	—	fall down	Miles, turris c.

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

caedere	cecīdī	caesum	<i>hew, fell</i> (tr.)	Abscidere, <i>cut off</i> Praecidere, <i>c. off</i>
255 incidere	incīdī	incisum	<i>cut into</i>	
occidere	occīdī	occisum	<i>kill, slay</i>	Con-, <i>c. to pieces</i>
currere	cucurrī	cursum	<i>run</i> (intr.)	
accurrere	{ accurrī accucurri	accursum	<i>run to a place</i>	Ad te accurro
recurrere	recurrī	recursum	<i>run back</i>	
260 succurrere	succurri	succursum	<i>hasten to aid</i>	Tibi succurro
<i>Note: The other cpds. are conjug. like accurrere.</i>				
fallere	fefelli	dēceptum	<i>deceive</i>	Falsus, <i>false</i>
refellere	refelli	refūtātum	<i>disprove, rebut</i>	
parcere	pepercī	temperātum	<i>spare</i>	Tibi parco, t.
pellere	pepulī	pulsum	<i>drive out, push</i>	(Ex) patria p.
265 appellere	appulī	appulsum	<i>drive toward</i>	Navem ad ripam
appellare	appellavi	appellatum	<i>address, accost</i>	(With a request)
repellere	reppulī	repulsum	<i>drive back</i>	Vim vi repellere
pendere	pependī	pēnsum	<i>weigh, pay</i>	
impendere	impendī	impēnsum	<i>expend</i>	Pecuniam in res vanas impendere
270 suspendere	-pendī	-pēnsum	<i>hang up</i> (tr.)	
canere	cecīnī	cantātum	<i>sing, sound</i> (tr.)	Canit cervus; canit homo voce, fidibus
concinere	-cinuī	—	<i>agree together</i>	
pungere	pūpugī	pūnctum	<i>sting, puncture</i>	Pungit me, quod scribis
compungere	-pūnxī	-pūnctum	<i>sting severely</i>	
275 tangere	tetigī	tāctum	<i>touch</i>	Rhenum a., b. on
atingere	attigī	(tāctum)	<i>border on, reach</i>	Manus ad te t.
tendere	tetendī	tentum	<i>stretch</i> (tr.)	Animus a. ad - a.
attendere	attendī	attentum	<i>attend to</i>	Stuporem eius attende, mark his stupidity
contendere	-tendī	-tentum	<i>exert (myself)</i>	
280 extendere	-tendī	{ extentum extēnsum	<i>extend</i> (tr.)	
ostendere	-tendī	ostentātum	<i>show</i>	See dare, pg. 85.
abdere	abdidī	abditum	<i>put away, hide</i>	Mihi credo
crēdere	crēdidī	crēditum	<i>believe</i>	Hosti me d., sur- render
dēdere	-didī	-ditum	<i>give up</i>	Addere, <i>add</i>
285 ēdere	-didī	-ditum	<i>give out</i>	Condere, <i>found</i>
trādere	-didī	-ditum	<i>transmit</i>	Prodere, <i>betray</i>
reddere	reddidī	redditum	<i>give back</i>	

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

Present with Reduplication

bi- bere	bibī	pōtum	<i>drink</i>	
cōn- si-stere ,	cōnstitī —		<i>place one's self,</i> <i>halt (intr.)</i>	In loco c. Hic consistimus
²⁹⁰ dēsistere	-stitī	—	<i>leave off</i>	Caede desiste
resistere	-stitī	—	<i>resist</i>	Vix r. dolori
circumsistere	-stetī	— (p. 85, 12)	<i>surround</i>	Plures paucos c.

Reduplication lost

percellere	perculī	perculsum	<i>knock down</i>	
antecellere	} praestitī —		<i>excel</i>	Tibi antecello
²⁹⁵ excellere				Vobis (plur.!) e.
contundere	cōntudī	contūsum	<i>crush, bruise</i>	
obtundere	ōbtudī	obtūsum	<i>blunt the mind</i>	Multa mentem o.
retundere	réttudī	retūsum	<i>blunt (the sword)</i>	
findere	fidī	fissum	<i>split</i>	
³⁰⁰ diffindere	díffidī	diffissum	<i>cleave asunder</i>	See n. 198, a.
scindere	scidī	scissum	<i>tear assunder</i>	
rescindere	réscidī	rescissum	<i>tear down, annul</i>	Pontem, acta r.

Perfect formed by lengthening of Vowel

emere	ē mī	ē emptum	<i>buy</i>	
coē mere	-ēmī	-ē emptum	<i>buy up</i>	
³⁰⁵ adimere	-ēmī	-ē emptum	<i>take away</i>	Tibi pecuniam a.
dīrimere	dīrēmī	dīrē emptum	<i>separate, end</i>	Nox proelium d.
cōmere	cō mpsī	cō mpsum	<i>adorn, dress</i>	
dēmere	dē mpsī	dē mpsum	<i>take away from</i>	Tibi molestiam d.
prōmere	prō mpsī	prō mpsum	<i>take out</i>	Interimere, do away with
³¹⁰ sūmere	sū mpsī	sū mpsum	<i>take (for myself)</i>	
legere	lē gī	lē ctum	<i>read</i>	Relegere, r. again
(lēgāre	lēgāvī	lēgātum	<i>send</i>	
perlegere	-lē gī	-lē ctum	<i>read through</i>	
colligere	collē gī	collē ctum	<i>collect, gather</i>	Eligere = seligere = deligere
³¹⁵ dēligere	dēlē gī	dēlē ctum	<i>choose</i>	
diligere	dīlē xī	dīlē ctum	<i>esteem highly</i>	Nunc amo, ante diligebam
intelligere	intellē xī	intellē ctum	<i>see into</i>	
neglegere	neglē xī	neglē ctum	<i>neglect, slight</i>	

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

agere	ēgī	āctum	<i>drive, act, do</i>	Circumagere,
³²⁰ peragere	-egī	-āctum	<i>carry thro'</i>	<i>drive around</i>
abigere	-ēgī	-āctum	<i>drive away</i>	Adigere, <i>drive to</i>
subigere	-ēgī	-āctum	<i>subjugate</i>	
ambigere	—	—	<i>dispute about</i>	
cōgere	coēgī	coāctum	<i>gather, force</i>	Te emere coegit
³²⁵ dēgere	ēgī	āctum	<i>spend</i>	Vitam degere
frangere	frēgī	frāctum	<i>break to pieces</i>	Portas refringere,
cōnfringere	-frēgī	-fractum	<i>dash to pieces</i>	<i>break open</i>
relinquere	reliqūi	relictum	<i>leave behind</i>	de - l., <i>tr'gress</i>
vincere	vīcī	victum	<i>conquer</i>	
³³⁰ convincere	-vīcī	-victum	<i>convict</i>	Te furti convinco
rumpere	rūpī	ruptum	<i>burst, rend</i>	Vincula, foedus r.
corrumpere	-rūpī	-ruptum	<i>bribe, spoil</i>	Pro--r., b. <i>forth</i>
fundere	fūdī	fūsum	<i>pour, rout</i>	Adversarios f.

Perfects without apparent change of Stem

accendere	accendī	accēsum	<i>kindle (above)</i>	
³³⁵ incendere	incendī	incēsum	<i>k. (on every side of)</i>	
succendere	succendō	succēsum	<i>k. (underneath)</i>	
scandere	—	—	<i>mount, climb</i>	Alpes tran—sc.
āscendere	ascendī	āscēsum	<i>mount, climb</i>	Murum a—sc.
dēscendere	dēscendī	dēscēsum	<i>descend (dē)</i>	Navem con—sc.
³⁴⁰ excūdere	excūdī	excūsum	<i>hammer out</i>	
dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēsum	<i>{ ward off defend</i>	Bellum def.
prehendere	prehendī	prehēsum	<i>lay hold of</i>	Castra ab h. d.
dēprehendere	-prehendī	-prehēsum	<i>surprise</i>	comprehendere,
cōnsidere	cōnsēdī	—	<i>sit down</i>	<i>seize, grasp</i>
³⁴⁵ possidere	possēdī	possessum	<i>occupy</i>	Hic in umbra c.
possidēre	possēdī	possessum	<i>possess</i>	
<i>Note: -sēdī and -sessum are forms of sedēre.</i>				
pandere	pandī	passum	<i>spread out</i>	Mandere, <i>chew</i>
vertere	vertī	versum	<i>turn</i>	Terga, v., <i>flee</i>
animadvertere	-vertī	-versum	<i>{ observe punish</i>	Quae fiant, a'e
³⁵⁰ ēvertere	-vertī	-versum	<i>overturn,</i>	In eum a'o
			<i>destroy</i>	Avertere, t, <i>away</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

vellere	vellī	vulsum	<i>pluck</i>	
vīsere	vīsī	—	<i>view; visit</i>	invisere, <i>visit</i>
angere	sollicitāvī	sollicitā-	<i>cause</i>	
		tum	<i>distress</i>	Angi, <i>feel d.</i>
furere	īnsānīvī	—	<i>be furious</i>	
355 vergere	—	—	<i>be situated</i>	Ad septent. v.

Verbs in uō (vō)

Perfect without any apparent change of Stem

acuere	acuī	{ acūtus(adj.) <i>sharp, sharpen</i> <i>pointed</i>		Acutus homo Serram, mentem a. Acute responde
arguere	arguī	accūsātum	<i>charge with</i>	Te sceleris arguo
	argūtus (adj.),	<i>expressive; sagacious</i>		
coarguere	-arguī	convictum	<i>convict, prove</i>	Capitis, te accuso
redarguere	-arguī	refūtātum	<i>refute</i>	Te, orationem r.
360 imbuerē	-imbuī	imbūtum	<i>moisten</i>	
exuere	exuī	exūtum	<i>pull off</i>	Humanitatem e.
induere	induī	indūtum	<i>put on</i>	Annulum mihi i.
minuere	minuī	minūtum	<i>diminish(tr.)</i>	
statuere	statuī	statūtum	<i>set up, decide</i>	Statuam ei st.
365 cōstituere	-stituī	-stitūtum	<i>determine</i>	Idem facere c.
tribuere	tribuī	tribūtum	<i>impart, grant</i>	
luere	luī	ablūtum	<i>wash off</i>	Diluere, (like abl.) <i>wash away</i>
luere	luī	expiātum	<i>expiate</i>	
abluere	abluī	ablūtum	<i>wash off</i>	Crimen diluo
370 abnuere	abnuī	recūsātum	<i>refuse</i>	Nihil tibi abnuo
annuere	annuī	concessum	<i>nod, assent to</i>	Toto capite id a.
respuere	respuī	repudiātum	<i>reject, spurn</i>	Spuere, -i, <i>spit</i>
ruere	ruī	ruitūrus	<i>fall, rush</i>	Sciens in mala r.
dīruere	dīruī	dīrutum	<i>demolish</i>	Corr., i, (intr.) <i>fall down</i>
375 obruere	obruī	obrutum	<i>overwhelm</i>	
congruere	congruī	—	<i>agree</i>	Tecum congruo
metuere	metuī	—	<i>fear</i>	M., ne, <i>fear that.</i>
solvere	solvi	solūtum	<i>loose, pay</i>	Navem, <i>set sail</i>
persolvere	-solvi	-solūtum	<i>pay</i>	Promissa, vota p.
volvere	volvī	volūtum	<i>roll</i>	

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

Perfects formed by s

distinguere	-stīnxī	-stīnctum	<i>distinguish</i>	Vera a falsis d.
exstinguere	-stīnxī	-stīnctum	<i>put out</i>	
unguere } ungere }	ūnxī	ūnctum	<i>anoint</i>	
385 fluere } St. flug }	fluxī	{ fluxus, adj. { fleeting	<i>flow</i>	Divitiis affluens <i>overfl. with riches</i>
struere } St. strug }	strūxī	strūctum	<i>build</i>	Aciem instruere, <i>place in battle ar- ray</i>
vivere } St. vig }	vīxī	vīctūrus	<i>live</i>	Vitam vivere <i>Cum virtute v.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, iō (conj. pg. 78)

Perfects formed by v or u

cupere	cupiō	cupīvī	cupitum	<i>desire, long for</i>
sapere	sapiō	sapīvī	—	<i>be wise, savor of</i>
390 rapere	rapīō	rapuī	raptum	<i>rob; snatch</i>
dīripere	-ripīō	-ripuī	-reptum	<i>plunder</i>

Perfect formed by s

cōnspicere	-spiciō	-spexī	-spectum	<i>get sight of</i>
sūspicere	-spicio	-spexī	-spectum	<i>look up to</i>
sūspicārī	sūspiciātus	sum		<i>suspect</i>
395 ēlicere	-liciō	ēlicuī	-licitum	<i>lure forth</i>
illicere	-liciō	illēxī	illectum	{ seduce
pellicere	-liciō	pellēxī	pellectum	{ inveigle
allicere	-liciō	allēxī	—	<i>allure</i>
concutere	-cutiō	-cussī	-cussum	<i>shake</i>
400 percutere	-cutiō	-cussī	-cussum	<i>strike, pierce</i>

Perfects formed by Reduplication

parere	pariō	peperi	{ partum { paritūrus	<i>bring forth</i>
	partus, acquired;		parātus, ready	

Perfects formed by Lengthening of Vowel

capere	capiō	cēpī	captum	<i>take, seize</i>
accipere	-cipiō	-cēpī	-ceptum	<i>get</i>
dēcipere	-cipiō	-cēpī	-ceptum	<i>cheat</i>
405 suscipere	-cipiō	-cēpī	-ceptum	<i>take up</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, iō (Conj. pg. 78)

facere (203)	faciō	fēcī	factum	<i>make, do</i>
	Passive, fierī etc., 237.			
assuēfacere	-faciō	-fēcī	-factum	<i>accustom</i>
patefacere	-faciō	-fēcī	-factum	<i>open</i>
vacuēfacere	-faciō	-fēcī	-factum	<i>empty</i>

The **Pass.** of -faciō is -fiō; **Accent:** -fácis (8, c.)

410 cōficere	-ficiō	-fēcī	-fectum	<i>accomplish</i>
--------------	--------	-------	---------	-------------------

The **Pass.** of -ficiō is -ficior; **Accent:** cónficis

iacere	iaciō	iēcī	iactum	<i>throw</i>
abicere	-iciō (4, 11)	-iēcī	-iectum	<i>throw away</i>
prōicere	-iciō	-iēcī	-iectum	<i>fling away</i>
fodere	fodiō	fōdī	fossum	<i>dig</i>
415 cōnfodere	-fodiō	-fōdī	-fossum	<i>stab</i>
fugere	fugiō	fūgī	(fugitūrus)	<i>flee</i>
aufugere	-fugiō	-fūgī		<i>flee from</i>
cōnfugere	-fugiō	-fūgī		<i>flee to</i>

VERBA INCHOATIVA: INCHOATIVES

Inchoatives are **derivatives** (253), formed from verbs, adjectives and substantives; they are called inchoatives (incohāre, *begin*) because they usually denote the beginning of an action or a condition.

-scō = begin to

1. Inchoatives whose Radical Word is unknown

discere	didicī	—	<i>learn</i>
420 dēdiscere	dēdidicī	—	<i>unlearn, forget</i>
poscere	poposcī	postulātum	<i>demand</i>
dēposcere	dēpoposcī	—	<i>demand earnestly</i>
reposcere	repetīvī	repetītum	<i>demand back</i>
pāscere	pāvī	pāstum	<i>pasture (tr.)</i>
425 pāscī	pāstus sum		<i>pasture (intr.)</i>
crēscere	crēvī	—	<i>grow</i>
nōscere	nōvī	—	<i>come to know</i>
	nōvī, <i>know</i>	nōtus (adj.) <i>known</i>	

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

cognōscere	cognōvī	cognitum	get to know
	cognōvī	know well	
agnōscere	agnōvī	āgnitum	acknowledge
430 ignōscere	ignōvī	ignōtum	forgive (tibi)
	ignōtus (adj.),	unknown	
quiēscere	quiēvī	quiētūrus	repose
	quiētus (adj.),	quiet	
cōnsuēscere	consuēvī	—	accustom oneself
	cōnsuēvī, am	accustomed;	assuētus (a.) accustomed
	labōre	assuētus,	accustomed to labor
	assuēvī -	soleō;	assuēveram = solēbam

2. INCOHATIVA VERBALIA (Root-word a Verb)

Perfect of inchoative - Perfect of root-verb.

Only sciscere has a pf. part.

inveterāre	inveterāscere	inveterāvī	become fixed
render old	inveterātus (adj.),	rooted	
(olēre, grow)	adolēscere	adolēvī	grow up
	adulatus (adj.),	grown up	
435	obsolēscere	obsolēvī	fall into disuse
	obsolētus (adj.)	worn out	
flōrēre	efflōrēscere	efflōruī	begin to flourish
horrēre	prehorrēscere	prehorruī	begin to shudder
senēre	cōnsenēscere	cōnsenuī	grow old, weak
be old	amicus c., vīrēs, lēges c.		
tacēre	conticēscere	conticuī	cease speaking
440 timēre	pertimēscere	pertimuī	begin to dread
valēre	convalēscere	convaluī	regain health
ardēre	exardēscere	exarsī	become inflamed
alere	coalēscere	coaluī	grow together
vīvere	revivīscere	revixī revictūrus	revive
445 cupere	concupīscere	concupivī	covet
dormīre	obdormīscere	obdormivī	fall asleep
scīre	scīscere	scīvī scītum (67)	decree
	mihi mortem cōnscīscō,	commit suicide	
	ā rēge	dēscīscō,	fall away from...

THIRD CONJUGATION : ere, ō

3. INCOHATIVA NOMINALIA (Root-word a Noun)

crēber	percrēbrēscere	percrēbruī	<i>gain ground</i>
dūrus	obdūrēscere (ad)	obdūruī	<i>become insensible</i>
⁴⁵⁰ mātūrus	mātūrēscere	mātūruī	<i>grow ripe</i>
mūtus	obmūtēscere	obmūtūī	<i>grow dumb</i>
vānus	ēvānēscere	ēvānuī	<i>vanish</i> [some]
gravis	ingravēscere	—	<i>become burden-</i>
puer	repuerāscere	—	<i>become a boy</i> <i>again</i>

209. FOURTH CONJUGATION: ĩre, iō

Perfects formed by v

Like audire:

condire	<i>season, embalm</i>	lēnire	<i>soften, soothe</i>
custōdire	<i>watch over</i>	mūnire	<i>fortify</i>
ēducāre	<i>educate</i>	servire	<i>serve (Tibi s.)</i>

With irregularities:

⁴⁵⁵ scire (204)	scīvī	scītum	<i>know</i>
nēscire	-scīvī	-scītum	<i>not to know</i>

Utrum sciens fecit
an inciens?

Inst. of pres. part. use : ignōrāns, ĩnciēns

sepelire	sepelīvī	sepultum	<i>bury</i>
----------	----------	----------	-------------

Perfects formed by u

aperire	aperuī	apertum	<i>open</i>
operire	operuī	opertum	<i>cover</i>
⁴⁶⁰ salire	saluī	—	<i>leap, hop</i>
dēsilire	dēsiluī	—	<i>leap down</i>

Ex equo, ad pedes

Perfects formed by s

refercire	refersī	refertum	<i>stuff, fill up</i>
fulcire	fulsī	fultum	<i>prop up</i>
saepire	saepsī	saeptum	<i>hedge in</i>
⁴⁶⁵ sancire	sānxi	sānctum	<i>ratify</i>
sarcire	sarsī	sartum	<i>repair, mend</i>
vincire	vinxī	vinctum	<i>bind, fetter</i>
haurire	hausī	haustum	<i>draw</i>

Refertus, full:
domus referta
rebus omnibus,
civium or civibus
Sanctus, holy,

E fonte h.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: īre, iō

sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsūm	<i>feel, deem</i>
470 consentire	- sensi	- sensum	<i>agree (544)</i>
dissentire	- sensi	- sensum	<i>differ</i>

Unum atque
idem s.
Tibi, tecum c.
A te, tecum d.

Perfects formed by Reduplication

reperīre	repperī	repertum	<i>find out</i>
comperīre	comperī	compertum	<i>learn</i>

Quis fecerit, r.
Certo de eo c.

Perfects formed by Lengthening of Vowel

venīre	vēnī	ventum	<i>come</i>
475 advenire	- veni	- ventum	<i>arrive</i>
convenire	- veni	- ventum	<i>come together</i>
invenire	- veni	- ventum	<i>find</i>
pervenire	- veni	- ventum	<i>come to</i>
subvenire	- veni	- ventum	<i>come to assist</i>

Ad te v.
Romam, at R.
In unum locum
Quo intendit, p.
Tibi in hac re s.

Without Perfect and Participle-Stem

480 ferīre	fīcī percussī	ictum percussum	<i>strike, hit</i>
amicīre	—	amictus	<i>wrap about</i>
ēsūrīre	—	—	<i>{ desire to eat { be hungry</i>

Foedus ferire
Securi eum f
Toga amictus
Desiderativa in
urio have pres. st.
only.

210. Deponents of the First Conjugation: ārī, or

(These are all regular and follow hortārī.)

arbitrārī	arbitrātus sum	<i>believe, deem</i>
Part. arbitrātus , <i>supposing</i>		
cūctārī	cūctātus sum	<i>hesitate</i>
485 glōriārī	glōriātus sum	<i>glory in</i>
grātulārī	grātulātus sum	<i>congratulate</i>
minārī	minātus sum	<i>threaten</i>
minitārī	minitātus sum	
morārī	morātus sum	<i>{ retard (tr.) { tarry (intr.)</i>
490 opitulārī	opitulātus sum	<i>bring help to</i>
precārī	precātus sum	<i>ask, beg</i>
versārī	versātus sum	<i>{ dwell, be; { be engaged in</i>

Accedere c.
Victoria g.
Tibi de hac re g.
Ei crucem m.
Si quid te moratur
Athenis morari
Tibi o.
Deum p., ut.
In foro v.
In re diff. v.

211. Deponents of the Second Conjugation = ērī, eor

licērī	licitus sum	<i>bid on</i>	Hortos l.
pollicērī	pollicitus sum	<i>promise</i>	Hoc tibi p.
⁴⁹⁵ miserērī	miseritus sum	<i>pity</i>	Vestri m'eor
miserārī	miserātus sum	<i>deplore</i>	Vos miseror
tuērī	tutātus sum	<i>guard, look to</i>	Tutus (a.) safe
intuērī	āspexī	<i>look at</i>	
verērī	veritus sum	<i>fear, revere</i>	V., ne; I f. that
⁵⁰⁰ faterī	fassus sum }	<i>confess</i>	Confessa res.
cōnfītērī	cōnfessus sum }		(See n. 197)
medērī (intr.)	sānāvī (trans.)	<i>heal</i>	M. tibi; s. te
(rērī [no pres. part.]	ratus sum	<i>deem, believe</i>)	Ratus, <i>deeming</i> , is rare

212. Deponents of the Third Conjugation : ī, or

fruī	fūsus sum { fruitūrs	<i>enjoy</i>	Pace f.
²⁰⁵ perfruī	perfrūctus sum	<i>enjoy fully</i>	Laetitia p.
fungī	fūctus sum	<i>perform</i>	Munere f., <i>perform a duty</i>
lābī	lāpsus sum	<i>glide, fall</i>	Inter nos l'mur
loquī	locūtus sum	<i>speak, talk</i>	Per litteras c.
colloquī	collocūtus sum	<i>converse</i>	Scuto, spe n.
⁵¹⁰ nīti	{ nīxus sum { (nīsus sum)	{ <i>lean, rest on</i> { <i>strive</i>	N', ut, <i>strive to</i>
amplectī	amplexus sum	<i>embrace</i>	De te, multa qu.
querī	questus sum	<i>complain</i>	Te sequor
sequī	secūtus sum	<i>follow</i>	Tibi obsequor
assequī	assecūtus sum	{ <i>obtain by</i> { <i>exertion</i>	<i>comply w. you</i>
⁵¹⁵ cōsequī	cōnsecūtus sum		Hac re u. ad...
ūtī	ūsus sum	<i>use</i>	Potestate...
abūtī	abūsus sum	<i>use up, misuse</i>	

Present in ior:

ággredi	aggressus sum	<i>attack</i>	Gradi, <i>step</i>
congrēdi	congressus sum	<i>meet with, fight</i>	Cum hostibus,
⁵²⁰ morī	mortuus sum	<i>die</i>	
Part. moritūrus			
pati	passus sum	<i>suffer</i>	Eos ire p.
pérpetī	perpessus sum	<i>suffer patiently</i>	

Inchoatives in scor:

adipīscī	adeptus sum	<i>attain by effort</i>	Studiis id a.
nancīscī	nānctus or nactus sum	<i>get by accident</i>	Occasionem n.
525 expergīscī	experrēctus sum	<i>awake (intr.)</i>	
irāscī	{ irātus (adj.) fui {suscēnsuī	<i>be angry</i>	Tibi i. or s.
oblīvīscī	oblītus sum	<i>forget</i>	Tui, rei or rem o. { Tui, rei remin. { De te, rem rec.
reminīscī	recordātus sum	<i>remember</i>	No part. in urus
nāscī	nātus sum	<i>be born</i>	Ab urbe, ex Asia
530 proficīscī	profectus sum	<i>set out</i>	Inimicum, amicum
ulcīscī	ultus sum	<i>avenge</i>	Lacte; caseo v.
vēscī	vixī or altus sum	<i>subsist on</i>	

213. Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation: īrī, ior

blandīrī	blandītus sum	<i>flatter</i>	Tibi blandior
adūlārī	adūlātus sum	<i>flatter</i>	Te adulator
535 largīrī	largītus sum	<i>bestow</i>	Tibi hoc largior
mentīrī	mentītus sum	<i>lie, deceive</i>	In eum hoc m'ris
mōlīrī	mōlītus sum	{ <i>set in motion</i> { <i>set about</i>	Ancoras m.
partīrī	partītus sum	<i>share, divide</i>	Maiora m.
540 impertīre	-īvī -ītum	<i>impart</i>	Dispartire, <i>distribute</i>
potīrī	potītus sum	<i>become master of</i>	Tota classe, rerum
sortīrī	sortītus sum	<i>get by lot</i>	Also: <i>draw lots</i>
<hr/>			
assentīrī	assēnsus sum	<i>give assent to</i>	Omnia tibi a.
545 experīrī	expertus sum	{ <i>try, test</i> { <i>experience</i>	Vim veneni exp.
opperīrī	oppertus sum	<i>await, wait</i>	Omnia experiri
mētīrī	mēnsus sum	<i>measure</i>	Ibi, tempora sua
ōrdīrī	ōrsus sum	<i>begin</i>	Di-m., m. <i>out</i>
orīrī	ortus sum	<i>rise</i>	O, ab. with
	Fut. part.: oritūrus		Sol oritur
			Tempestas co-o.

Note: Orīrī and its cpds. exc. adorīrī follow the 3d Conjugation: ōreris, ōritur etc. The only forms of the 4th Conjugation are:

orīrī and orīrer etc. = ōrerer etc.

550 **adorīrī** adortus sum *attack*

Caligo ob-o
F Rhenus oritus
Ex hepontis

Adoriris

214. VERBA IMPERSONALIA : IMPERSONAL VERBS

A verb is used impersonally, when its action is ascribed to an indeterminate subject. This subject is indicated by the 3d ps. sg. neuter:

ningit, **it** snows.

By usage, however, all those verbal forms of the 3d ps. which do not take a substantive as their subject, are (less accurately) called impersonal; their determinate subjects may be pronouns, numeral-adjectives, infinitives, phrases or clauses:

hōc licet; vīxisse eum paenitet;
fit, ut de eādem rē aliud aliī videātur.

Forms of impersonal verbs (219)

Pres.	: paenitet,	paeniteat,	paenitēre
Impf.	: paenitēbat,	paenitērēt	—
Fut. I.	: paenitēbit	—	—
Perf.	: paenituit,	paenituerit,	paenituisse
Plupf.	: paenituerat,	paenituisset	
Fut. II.	: paenituerit	—	—

Note: The imperative is supplied by the subjunctive:

Pudeat tē, *be ashamed*

215. 1. Always impersonal are:

Paenitēre	paenitet	paenituit	<i>repent</i>
pigēre	piget	piguit	<i>annoy</i>
pudēre	pudet	{puduit {puditumest	{ <i>put to</i> { <i>shame</i>
taedēre	taedet	pertaesum est	<i>disgust</i>
555 miserēre	miseret	{personal form {miseritus sum	{ <i>move to</i> { <i>pity</i>
oportēre	oportet	oportuit	<i>ought</i>
rēferre	rēfert	rētulit	{ <i>be of</i> { <i>moment</i>

Eum huius rei

paenitet (p., p.,
t., m.,):

He repents,
is annoyed etc.

Te ire oportet

Hoc mea nihil
refert

216. 2. Usually impersonal are:

a. Verbs denoting operations of nature:

fulgēre	fulget	fulsit	<i>lighten</i>
tonāre	tonat	tonuit	<i>thunder</i>
560 pluere	pluit	pluit	<i>rain</i>
ningere	ningit	(nīnxit)	<i>snow</i>
lūcēre	lūcet	lūxit	<i>be light</i>
lūcēscere	lūcēscit	lūxit	<i>grow light</i>
advesperāscere		(-āvit)	<i>grow dark</i>

Tonat, **it** th's;
but also
Iuppiter tonat

Dilucescit;
but also:
Dies illucescit

b. Four other verbs:

⁵⁶⁵ decēre	decet	decuīt	<i>be becoming</i>	Ea te decent
dēdecere	-decet	-decuīt	<i>be unbecom'g</i>	Te irasci dedecet
libēre	libet	libuīt	<i>suit</i>	Hoc mihi libet
licēre	licet	licuīt	<i>be allowed</i>	Haec ei licent

**217. 3. Personal in one meaning,
Impersonal in another are:**

iuvāre	iuvat	iūvit	<i>delight</i>	Me iuvat, it d.
⁵⁷⁰ fallere	fallit	fefellit	<i>escape</i>	Me fallit
fugere	fugit	fūgit	<i>escape</i>	Me fugit
praeterīre	praeterit	praeteriit	<i>escape</i>	Me praeterit
appārēre	appāret	appāruit	<i>be evident</i>	Deum esse appa- ret, l., p., c.
liquēre	liquet	licuit	<i>be clear</i>	
⁵⁷⁵ patēre	patet	patuit	<i>be manifest</i>	
cōnstāre	cōnstat	cōnstitit	<i>be well known</i>	
condūcere	condūcit	condūxit	<i>serve</i>	Te id facere Conducit, expe- dit, convenit
expedīre	expedit	expedīvit	<i>be useful</i>	
convenīre	convenit	convēnit	<i>be fit</i>	
⁵⁸⁰ fierī	fit	factum est	happen: <i>fit etc., ut</i>	Omnia fiunt
accidere	accidit	accidit		Mala accidunt
contingere	contingit	contigit		Bona contingunt B. et m. eveniunt
ēvenīre	ēvenit	ēvēnit		
restāre	restat	restitit	<i>remain</i>	Restat, ut
⁵⁸⁵ accēdere	accēdit	accessit	<i>be added</i>	Accedit ut, quod
placēre	placet	placuit	<i>please</i>	Mihi placet
praestāre	praestat	praestitit	<i>be better</i>	Mihi praestat
attinēre	attinet	attinuit	<i>concern</i>	Ad me attinet
interesse	interest	interfuit	<i>be of moment</i>	Eius, mea interest

218. 4. The Passive of Intransitive Verbs

Venītur, *they* (impers.) *come*; ventum est, *they came*
 pūgnātur, *there is fighting*; pūgnātum est, *there was a fight*
 But also: pūgna pūgnāta est, *the fight was fought*

219. *Note:* Excepting the infinitive, **noun-forms** of impersonal verbs are **rare**:

Indūcī ad pudendum, ad pigendum.

Tanta vīs fuit paenitendī (*sorrow*).

Errōrem corrigere paenitendō.

Cōnsiliī nostrī nōbīs paenitendum putō.

Libēns, pudēns, paenitēns, } *are*
willing, modest, repentant, } *adjectives*

220. VERBA DEFECTIVA : DEFECTIVE VERBS

590 Coepī, *have begun* (supplied by incipiō)

incipere coepī { *inceptum*
coeptus *begin*

Perfect System complete: coepī, coeperim... coepisse;

Partic. System only: coeptus, coeptus sum, coeptum esse.

Note: Coeptus sum, instead of coepī, is used with a passive infinitive which has passive meaning; the same holds good of dēsitus sum, instead of dēsī (dēstitī):

Rēs mōvērī **coepta est**, *the thing began to be moved;*
 but rēs mōvērī coepit, *the thing began to move itself;*
 res lābī coepit, *the thing began to move.*

(The 1st infin. has *passive*, the 2d *reflexive*, the 3d *active* meaning.)

meminī, mementō, *remember*

Perfect System { meminī, memineram, meminērō etc., meminisse
complete } *remember, remembered, shall remember, to rem.*

Imperative: mēmentō, mementōte, *remember*

(*Supplied by reminīscī; recordārī*)

ōdī, ōsūrus, *hate*

Perfect System { ōdī, ōderam, ōderō, etc. ōdisse
complete } *hate, hated, shall hate, to hate*

Partic. System: ōsūrus, ōsūrus sum, ōsūrum esse

Passive : odiō esse alicuī, in odiō esse apud....

(*Supplied by* odium in aliquem habēre.)

āiō, *I affirm, I say* **yes** (Negō from negāre: *I say* **no**.)

Pres. Indic.: āiō, ais, **ait**; āiunt; Perfect Indic.: **ait**.

Impf. Indic.: āiēbam, āiēbās etc.

Ain (= aisne)? *Really, indeed, is it possible?*

inquam (inserted in direct quotations), **say I, said I**.

Pres. Indic.: inquām, inquis, **inquit**; inquiunt

Impf. " — — inquitēbat;

Future " — inquiēs, inquiet

Perfect " — inquisti, **inquit**

Videō, videō, inquam, nōn cōgitō solum.

(Supplied by dicere.)

595 fandō audīre, *learn by hearsay*.

affārī affātur, affātus sum *address*

praefārī praefātur, praefātus sum *say beforehand*

Note: Forms of fārī (*speak*) and its cpds. are rare

quaesō, quaesumus: *I, we beg*

Note: Quaesō is used especially to soften the imperative:

Quaesō, attende,.....; attende quaesō.....

quaesō, ut attendātis; quaesō, quid hōc est?

salvē, salvēte; salvēre tē iubeō:

used at meeting: *hail! welcome!*

valē, valēte; valēre tē iubeō:

used at separating: *farewell!*

havē (avē), havēte (avēte); havēre (avēre) te iubeō:

used at both meeting and separating: *hail, farewell!*

600. cedo, *say, let us hear! give, out with it!*

cedo, quid postea? *let us hear, what then?*

cedō, quaesō, codicem: *please, hand the book,*

221.

VERBA ANOMALA = IRREGULAR VERBS

esse, sum, fuī, futūrus, <i>to be</i>				
Indicātīvus			Coniūnctīvus (183)	
Praesēns: <i>I am</i>				
1.	sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
2.	es	estis	sīs	sītis
3.	est	sunt	sit	sint
Imperfectum : <i>I was</i>				
1.	eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
2.	erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
3.	erat	erant	esset	essent
Futūrum I.: <i>I shall be</i>				
1.	erō	erimus		
2.	eris	eritis		
3.	erit	erunt		
Perfectum: I was , <i>I have been</i> .				
1.	fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerimus
2.	fuistī	fuistis	fueris	fueritis
3.	fuit	fuērunt	fuerit	fūerint
Plūsquamperfectum: <i>I had been</i>				
1.	fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
2.	fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
3.	fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent
Futūrum II. : <i>I shall have been</i>				
1.	fuerō	fuerimus		
2.	fueris	fueritis		
3.	fuerit	fūerint		

Probus sum, improbus nōn sum;

Puerī probī sumus, erimus.....

Imperātīvus praesentis:	es <i>be thou</i>	este <i>be ye</i>
Imperātīvus futūrī:	estō <i>thou shalt be</i>	estōte <i>ye shall be</i>
Infīnītīvus praesentis:	esse	<i>to be</i>
Infīnītīvus perfectī:	fuisse	<i>to have been</i>
Infīnītīvus futūrī	{ futūrum, am, um etc. esse { or: fore (unchangeable)	<i>to be about to be</i>
Participium futūrī:	futūrus, a, um	<i>about to be</i>

222. Instead of estō, **he** *shall be*, and suntō, *they shall be* commonly **sit** and **sint** are used (204)

Note: Forem, forēs, foret, forent = essem, essēs, esset, essent.

223. Compounds of esse

1. abesse	absum	āfuī	āfutūrus	<i>be absent</i>
	absēns	absent		
2. adesse	{ adsum { assum	adfuī affuī	adfutūrus affutūrus	<i>be present</i>
	praesēns	present		
3. dēesse	dēsum	dēfuī	dēfutūrus	<i>be lacking</i>
4. interesse	intersum	interfuī	interfutūrus	<i>be among</i>
5. obesse	obsum	obfuī	obfutūrus	<i>hinder</i>
6. praese	praesum	praefuī	praefutūrus	<i>have charge of</i>
7. prōdesse	prōsum	prōfuī	prōfutūrus	<i>be useful</i>
8. superesse	supersum	superfuī	superfutūrus	<i>be left, remain</i>
9. inesse	īnsum	(fuī in)		<i>be in</i>
10. subesse	subsum	(fuī sub)		<i>be under, near</i>

224. Note: Prōdesse is a compound of **prōd** (= prō) and esse: its **d** appears **before e** only: prōdes, prōderō.

225. Note: A b urbe abest

Prudentia ei deest

Tibi obsum, prosum

Nulli de inimicis supersunt

In eo (in) est scientia

A d portam adest

Pugnae navali interest

Exercitui praest

Spes salutis tibi superest

In ea re subest suspicio

Rhenus, hiems subest

226. Posse, possum, potuī be able, can

Indicātivus

Coniūctivus

Praes.: {	pos-sum	pos-sumus	pos-sim	pos-sīmus
	pot-es	pot-estis	pos-sīs	pos-sītis
	pot-est	pos-sunt	pos-sit	pos-sint

Impf.: **pot-eram** etc. pot-eramus etc. **pos=sem** etc. pos-sēmus etc.

Fut. I: pot-erō etc. pot-erimus etc.

Pf. S'ms.: pot-uī, pot-uerim, pot-ueram, pot-uissem, pot-uerō

Infin.: **posse, to be able potuisse, to have been able**

potēns (adj.), *mighty*

(No other forms)

Note: Posse is a compound of pot (=pote, *able*) and sum

possum = pote sum; posse = pote esse

potuī and potēns are forms of a former verb potēre.

227. Edere, ēdī, ēsum, eat : regular (See vb. 285)

Secondary Forms

ēs, ēst, ēstis	=	edīs, edit, editis
ēssēm, ēssēs, ēssēt etc.	=	ederem, ederēs, ederet etc.
ēs, ēste; ēstō, ēstōte	=	ede, edite; editō, editōte
ēsse	=	edere
ēstur, ēssētur	=	editur, ederētur

Note: The long ē alone distinguishes the secondary forms of edere from the forms of sum beginning with es.

228. Ferre, ferō, tulī, lātum, carry, bear

Praesēns indicātivī

Actīvum

Passīvum

1. ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
2. fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
3. fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

Imperfectum coniūctivī

1. ferrem etc.	ferrer etc.
-----------------------	--------------------

228.

Imperāt. praes.	fer , <i>carry thou</i>	fer <i>te</i> , <i>carry ye</i>
Imperāt. fūt.	<i>ferto</i> , <i>thou shalt carry</i>	<i>fertōte</i> , <i>ye shall carry</i>
Infinitivī	ferre , <i>to carry</i>	ferri , <i>to be carried</i>

Note: All other forms are regular :

feram, ferās etc.

feram ferēs etc.

tulī, tulerīm etc.

lātus sum, sim etc.

Distinguish : ferēs, ferrēs;

ferris, ferēris, ferrēris

229.

Compounds of *ferre*

afferre	attulī	allātum	<i>carry to, bring</i>	Tibi nuntium a.
anteferre	antetuli	antelatum	<i>prefer</i>	Hoc isti rei a.
auferre	abstulī	ablātum	<i>carry away</i>	Id tibi (a te) au.
cōnferre	contulī	collātum	{ <i>carry together</i> <i>compare</i>	Signa aliquo c. Tecum eum c.
Mē Rōmam c., <i>I go to Rome</i>				
dēferre	dētulī	dēlātum	{ <i>bear to</i> <i>report</i>	Litteras ad te d. Rem ad eum d.
differre	distulī	dilātum	<i>put off</i>	Id in posterum d.
differe	—	—	<i>differ</i>	Re non d. ab
efferre	extulī	ēlātum	<i>carry out of</i>	Me e., <i>am haughty</i>
inferre	intulī	illatum	<i>carry into</i>	Sociis bellum i.
offerre	obtuli	oblātum	<i>offer</i>	Ultro me ei o.
praeferre	praetuli	praelatum	<i>prefer</i>	
referre	rettulī	relātum	<i>carry back</i>	Gratiam r. pro, <i>return thanks</i> (<i>in deed</i>); gratias agere, <i>in word</i>
sufferre	{ sustinui sustuli	sustentatum	<i>suffer, endure</i>	Saxa, <i>clamorem t.</i> Te de medio t.
tollere	sustulī	sublātum	{ <i>lift, raise</i> <i>do away with</i>	Caput extollit
extollere	extulī	ēlātum	<i>raise, exalt</i>	

Memoriam fuisse in eō singulārem ferunt

It is related that he had a memory extraordinary

- 230.** velle, volō, voluī, **will**, wish, want
 nōlle, nōlō, nōluī, **won't**, don't want
 mälle, mālō, māluī, choose rather, **prefer**

Praesēns indicātīvī	volō vīs vult volumus vultis volunt	nōlō nōn vīs nōn vult nolumus nōn vultis nōlunt	mālō māvis māvult mālumus māvultis mālunt
Praesēns coniūctīvī	velim velīs velit velimus velitis velint	nōlim nōlis nōlit nōlimus nōlitis nōlint	mālim mālis mālit mālimus mālitis mālint
Imperfectum indicātīvī	volēbam volēbās etc.	nōlēbam nōlēbās etc.	mālēbam mālēbās etc.
Imperfectum coniūctīvī	vellem vellēs etc.	nōllem nōllēs etc.	māllem māllēs etc.
Futūrum I.	volam volēs etc.	nōlam nōlēs etc.	mālam mālēs etc.
Imperāt. praes. Imperāt. fut.	— —	nōlī nōlīte nōlītō nōlītōte	— —
Infīnīt praes.	velle	nōlle	mälle
Partic. praes.	(cupiēns)	(invītus)	—
Perfect Systems	voluī, voluerim, nōluī, nōluerim, māluī, māluerim,	volueram, voluissē, nōlueram, nōluissē, mālueram, māluissē,	voluerō nōluerō māluerō

Note: Distinguish nōllēs and nōlēs, māllēs and mālēs.
 Nōlō is composed of ne volō; mālō of mage volō.

- 231.** Sīs (= sī vīs) *if you please*
 nōlī laudāre *don't praise*
 nōlīte laudāre *don't praise*
- Volō probus esse *I want to be honest*
 Volō tē probum esse *I want you to be honest*
 Volō tibi; (tuā causā) *I wish you well*

232. īre, eō, iī, itum, to go

Praes. indic.	eō	īs	it	īmus	ītis	eunt
Praes. coni.	eam	eās	eat	eāmus	eātis	eant
Imperf. indic.	ībam	ībās	ībat	ībāmus	ībātis	ībant
Imperf. coni.	īrem	īrēs	īret	īrēmus	īrētis	īrent
Futūrum I.	ībō	ībis	ībit	ībimus	ībitis	ībunt
Perf. indic.	iī	īstī	iīt	iīmus	īstis	iērunt
Perf. coni.	ierim	ieris	ierit	ierimus	ieritis	ierint
Plūsq'p. indic.	ieram	ierās	ierat	ierāmus	ierātis	ierant
Plūsq'p. coni.	īsem	īssēs	īset	īssēmus	īssētis	īssent
Futūrum II.	ierō	ieris	ierit	ierimus	ieritis	ierint
Imperāt. praes.	ī	go thou		īte	go ye	
Imperāt. fut.	ītō	thou shalt go		ītōte	ye shall go	
Infīnīt. praes.	īre	to go				
Infīnīt. perf.	īsse,	to have gone				
Infīnīt. fut.	itūrum etc.,	esse to be about to go				
Particip. praes.	iēns (Gen. euntis)	going				
Particip. fut.	itūrus, a um	about to go				
Gerundium	(ad) eundum, ī, ō (to or for) going....					
Supīna	itum, itū					

233.**Passive**

itur ībātur ībitur itum est etc., *they (impers.) go, were g. etc.*
eātur irētur — itum sit etc., *they may go, would go, etc.*
Gerundivum: **eundum est** *one must go*
mihi, tibi, ei, eundum est, *I, you, he must go*

234.**Intransitive compounds of īre**

abīre	abeō	abiī	abitus	<i>go away</i>	} Passive: abītur, ābitum est abeundum est, etc.
prōdīre	prōdeō	prodīi	prōditum	<i>go forth</i>	
redīre	redeō	redīi	reditum	<i>go back</i>	

magistrātū abīre	}	<i>resign office</i>
or sē abdicāre		

in pūblicum prōdīre *go out in public*

in gratiam redīre cum.. *be reconciled*

237. fierī, fiō, factus sum, become, happen, be made

Pres. I.	fiō	fīs	fit	(fīmus	fītis)	fīunt
Pres. S.	fīam	fīās	fīat	fīāmus	fīātis	fīant
Imp. I.	fīēbam	fīēbas	fīēbat	fīēbāmus	fīēbātis	fīēbant
Imp. S.	fierem	fierēs	fieret	fierēmus	fierētis	fierent
Fut. I.	fīam	fīēs	fiet	fīēmus	fīētis	fient
Pf. S'm	factus sum, eram, erō, sim, essem					
I'tive	not used, supplied by fīās, fīātis, fīat, fīant					
Inf. Pr.	fieri	become, happen, be made				
Inf. Pf.	factum etc., esse	have become, been made				
Inf. Ft.	fore or futūrum etc. esse	{ be about to be (come) be about to happen				
I. F. Pass.	factum iri	be about to be made				
P'c. Pr.	—					
P'c. Pf.	factus etc.	made, that has become				
P'c. Ft.	futūrus etc.	about to be (come), happen				
Ger'dive	faciendus etc.	that must be made				

1. Bonus, senex fiō *I become good, an old man*
Quid eō fiet? *What will become of him?*
2. Scelera fiunt *Crimes occur*
Ut fit *As it usually happens*
3. Cōsul fiō *I am made a consul*
Cupiditāte caecus fiō *I am blinded by passion*
Opera ab iis fiebant *The w. were being constructed*

Note: Inchoatives (pg. 98) are often preferred to fierī, become:

Lūcēscit, senēscō

With *things* cōfici, perfici are preferred to fierī, be made:

Opera perficiuntur

Note: The i before er (in fierī and fierem) is short.

238

PRAEPOSITIONES = PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions denote:

1. Relations of **space**;
2. Relations of **time**;
3. Other relations (of **manner, purpose, cause** etc.)

239. I. Prepositions used with the Accusative and the Ablative:

IN

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. in urbem, in Italiam | <i>into the capital (in) to Italy</i> |
| in montem | <i>up the mountain,</i> |
| in vallem | <i>down into the valley</i> |
| 2. in multam noctem | <i>till late in the night</i> |
| in annum | <i>for (the space of) a year</i> |
| in posterum diem | <i>for the following day</i> |
| 3. eius in patrem amor | <i>love for his father</i> |
| oratio in Catilinam | <i>speech against Catiline</i> |
| in utramque partem | <i>for and against</i> |
| hunc in modum | <i>in this manner</i> |
| 1. in urbe, in capite | <i>in the city, on the head</i> |
| pontem in flumine facere | <i>to make a bridge over the river</i> |
| 2. bis in diē | <i>twice a day (in the course of)</i> |
| 3. in septem sapientissimus | <i>the wisest among the seven; (of)</i> |
| in hōc homine..... | <i>in the case of this man...</i> |
| in summā senectūte | <i>in spite of extreme old age</i> |

SUB

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. sub iugum mittere | <i>to send under the yoke</i> |
| sub montem succedere | <i>to come to the foot of the mountain</i> |
| 2. sub noctem | <i>shortly before nightfall</i> |
| sub haec dicta | <i>just after these words</i> |
| 3. sub (in) potestatem redigere | <i>subdue, bring under the power of</i> |
| 1. sub monte considerare | <i>to settle at the foot of the (mountain)</i> |
| sub divō | <i>under the open sky</i> |
| 2. sub ipsā prōfectione | <i>at the time of the departure</i> |
| 3. sub imperiō alicuius esse | <i>to be in the power of someone</i> |

240. II. Prepositions used with the Ablative only

Ab, ā, ex, ē, dē,
cōram, prō and prae,
tenus, cum, sine.

Note 1: ā and ē are used before **consonants** only;

ab and ex are used before **any** letter.

(ab is rarely used before b, p, f, v, m.)

Note 2: mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum (117);
quōcum or cum quō, quācum or cum quā etc. (132);
in all other cases cum precedes.

Ab, a (opp. - ad)

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. ab urbe venīre | <i>to come from the city</i> |
| 2. ā prīmīs temporibus | <i>from the first times</i> |
| ā pueritiā = a puerō (puerīs) | <i>from boyhood</i> |
| ab urbe conditā | <i>after (since) the building of Rome</i> |
| 3. ab aliquō laudārī | <i>to be praised by somebody</i> |
| ab aliquō flāgitāre | <i>to demand from somebody</i> |
| tē ab eō dēfendō, tueor | <i>I defend you against him</i> |
| ā tē = abs tē | <i>by you</i> |

Ex, e, (opp. in)

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. (ex) urbe pellere | <i>to drive out of the city</i> |
| ex equō dēsīlire | <i>to jump from the horse</i> |
| ex equō pugnāre | <i>to fight on horseback</i> |
| ē regiōne sōlis | <i>exactly opposite the sun</i> |
| 2. ex quō; ex eō tempore, quō | <i>since, since the time that</i> |
| 3. ē rē publicā | <i>for the good of the state</i> |
| ex sententiā | <i>according to one's wish</i> |
| ex aequō | <i>in accordance with fairness</i> |
| ex tempore dīcere | <i>{ speak acc. to the circumstances
 { on the spur of the moment</i> |

DE, (betw. ab and ex)

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1. dē mūrō dēicere | <i>to throw down from the wall</i> |
| dē terrā saxum tollere | <i>to lift the rock up from the ground</i> |
| 2. dē nocte profectus est | <i>he set out before the end of night</i> |
| 3. dē aliquā rē dīcere | <i>to speak about something</i> |
| quā dē causā | <i>for which reason</i> |
| dē sententiā | <i>according to the opinion of</i> |
| dē tē bene mereor | <i>I deserve well of you</i> |
| but: tua in mē merita | <i>your deserts in my behalf</i> |

CORAM {rare as preposition
 {frequent as adverb

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. cōram generō meō | <i>in the presence of my son-in-law</i> |
| Adverbially: cōram adest | <i>he is present in person</i> |

PRO

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. prō aede sedēre | <i>{to sit before the temple</i>
<i>{(i. e. the back turned towards it)</i> |
| but ante aedem | <i>before (i. e. facing) the temple</i> |
| prō suggestū | <i>on the (front part of the) tribune</i> |
| 2. — | — |
| 3. prō libertāte morī | <i>to die for liberty (in defence of)</i> |
| prō cōsule proficīscor | <i>I set out in place of the consul</i> |
| prō vectūrā solvō | <i>I pay for the transportation</i> |
| prō certō hōc dīcō | <i>I say this for certain</i> |
| prō tuā prūdentiā | <i>in accordance with your wisdom</i> |
| prō tempore (et rē) | <i>according to circumstances</i> |

PRAE

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. prae sē ferre (pugiōnem) | <i>to carry (a dagger) before one's self</i> |
| 2. — | — |
| 3. aliquid prae sē ferre | <i>to show (make a show of) something</i> |
| prae maerōre loquī nōn potuit | <i>for (prevented by) sadness (he could not speak)</i> |
| prae ceterīs iustus | <i>just, compared with the rest</i> |
| but praeter ceterōs iustus | <i>juster than the rest</i> |

Note: Prae sē is used with ferre, gerere, mittere, agere.

TENUS

(Postpositive; mostly poetical)

1. Taurō tenus rēgnāre *to rule as far as the Taurus*

CUM

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. cum patre vēnit | <i>he came with his father</i> |
| 2. cum primā lūce domum vēnit | <i>he came home at early dawn</i> |
| 3. cum togā pullā sedeō | <i>I sit in the dark toga</i> [sword] |
| cum gladiō in eum invāsit | <i>he rushed upon him with a</i> |
| aliquid sēcum reputāre | <i>} to think, reflect about someth.</i> |
| aliquid cum animō suō reputāre | |

SINE

3. Sine ūllā spē *without any hope*

241. III. Prepositions used with the Accusative only

Apud, ad and penes;
iūxtā, prope, propter;
ob, adversus, ergā, contrā;
īnfrā, suprā, intrā, extrā;
citrā, ūltrā, cis and trāns;
ante, post, secundum, praeter;
circum, circā, circiter;
super, per and inter.

APUD (used chiefly with persons).

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. apud eum sedēbat | <i>he sat near him</i> |
| apud senātum verba fēcit | <i>he spoke before the senate</i> |
| 2. apud māiōrēs nostrōs | <i>at the time of our ancestors</i> |
| 3. apud Platōnem | <i>in the works of Plato</i> |
| <i>but:</i> in Phaedrō Platōnis | <i>in Pluto's Phaedrus</i> |
| apud amīcum cēnāvī | <i>I dined in the house of my friend</i> |
| apud mē impius nihil valet | <i>an impious person has no
influence over me</i> |

AD (used chiefly with places)

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. ad urbem esse, ad Cannās | <i>to be near the city; near Cannae</i> |
| ad flūmen esse | <i>to be near (on the banks of)</i> |
| ad urbem ire | <i>to go to the city</i> [the river] |
| ad amicum venīre, scribere | <i>to come, write to him</i> |
| usque ad castra accessit | <i>he approached as far as the camp</i> |
| ad Océanum (versus) | <i>towards the Ocean</i> |
| 2. ad multam noctem | <i>till late in the night</i> |
| ad vesperum | <i>toward evening</i> |
| 3. homō ad aliquid ūtilis | <i>a man useful for something</i> [400] |
| ad quadringentōs sunt | <i>there are about (they amount to)</i> |
| ad ūnum omnēs adsunt | <i>all without exception are present</i> |
| <i>but</i> praeter ūnum omnēs | <i>all with the exception of one</i> |
| ad verbum | <i>word for word</i> |

PENES (with persons only)

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| 3 Penes Caesarem | <i>under the control, in the power of Caesar</i> |
|------------------|--|

IUXTA, PROPE, PROPTER

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. iūxtā mūrū | <i>close to the wall</i> |
| prope mūrū = prope (adv.) | <i>near the wall</i> |
| ā mūrō | |
| propter mūrū consēdimus | <i>we sat down near the wall</i> |
| Note: Also the adj. propior, | } <i>take the accus. (or the dative)</i> |
| proximus | |
| and the adv. propius, proximē | |
| 3. propter pācem | <i>on account of the actual peace</i> |
| but pācis causā (Position!) | <i>for the sake of obtaining peace</i> |

OB

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. exsilium mihi ob oculos versatur | <i>banishment is before my eyes</i> |
| 3. ob eam causam | <i>for that reason</i> |

ADVERSUS, ERGA, CONTRA

(Commonly of hostile, friendly, hostile feelings)

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. adversus or contrā montem | <i>opposite the mountain</i> |
| 3. adversus or contrā hostem | <i>against the enemy</i> |
| adversus illum est modestus | <i>towards him he is modest</i> |
| summus ergā vōs amor | <i>his great love for you</i> |
| voluntās ergā Caesarem | <i>good-will for Caesar</i> |

INFRA, SUPRA, INTRA, EXTRA

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. infra sīdera, suprā sīdera | below <i>the stars</i> , above <i>the stars</i> |
| intrā fīnēs, extrā fīnēs | within <i>the borders</i> , outside |
| 2. intrā decem annōs | <i>within ten years</i> [<i>the borders</i>] |

CITRA, ULTRA, CIS and TRANS

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. citra Rhēnum, ūltrā Rhēnum | on this side of , beyond <i>the Rhine</i> |
| cis Rhēnum, trāns Rhēnum | bordering <i>on this side</i> , <i>on the farther side</i> |

ANTE, POST, SECUNDUM, PRAETER

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. ante castra (see prō) | before (i. e. facing) <i>the camp</i> |
| post castra | behind <i>the camp</i> |
| 2. ante lūcem | <i>before daybreak</i> |
| post proelium | after <i>the battle</i> |
| post hominum memoriam | <i>as far as records go back</i> |
| 1. iter secundum mare | <i>a march along the sea-coast</i> |
| 2. secundum lūdōs | immediately after <i>the games</i> |
| 3. secundum Deum parentēs amandī | next to <i>God our p. are to be loved</i> |
| secundum nātūrā (opp. contrā) | in accordance with <i>nature</i> |
| 1. praeter castra | past <i>the camp</i> |
| 3. praeter cōsuētūdinem | <i>contrary to custom</i> |
| praeter modum | <i>beyond measure</i> |
| praeter tē nēmō (see prae) | <i>no one except you</i> |

CIRCUM, CIRCA, CIRCITER

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. circum urbem | <i>round the city</i> |
| templa circā fōrum | <i>the temples about the forum</i> |
| 2. circiter meridiem | <i>about noon</i> |

Note: Circiter usually is an adverb: mediā circiter nocte.

SUPER

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. tēctum super conclāvia | <i>the roofover (on top of) the rooms</i> |
| but: suprā conclāvia | <i>above (not touching) the rooms</i> |
| super (suprā) Sūnium nāvigāre | <i>to sail beyond Sunium</i> |

PER

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. per urbem fluit | <i>it flows through the city</i> |
| per mediōs hostēs (Position !) | <i>through the midst of the enemies</i> |
| per orbem terrārum | <i>all over the globe</i> |
| 2. per hiemem | <i>throughout the winter</i> |
| per noctem | <i>during the night</i> |
| 3. hōc per prōcūratōrem factum est | <i>{ it was done through the agency</i> |
| | <i>{ of a steward, by a steward</i> |
| per litterās colloquī | <i>to converse by (means of) letters</i> |
| per vim plūrimum possunt | <i>they can accomplish much through</i> |
| per deōs iūrāre | <i>to swear by the gods [violence</i> |
| per mē licet | <i>as far as I am concerned, you may</i> |
| per valetūdinem venīre nōn | <i>on account of ill health I cannot</i> |
| possum | <i>come</i> |

INTER

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. inter Sēquanōs et Helvetiōs | <i>between the territory of...</i> |
| 2. diēs 45 inter bīnōs lūdōs | <i>between the two games</i> |
| inter cēnam | <i>during dinner</i> |
| 3. inter amīcōs | <i>between (among) friends</i> |
| inter nōs amāmus | <i>we love one another</i> |

242. POSITION OF THE PREPOSITIONS

The place of the preposition is **immediately** before (sometimes after) its noun:

Dē rēbus in urbe gestīs
 Contrā lēgem et prō lēge
 Contrā lēgem et pro eā
 Intrā mūnitiōnēs et extrā (adv.)

243. QUE and other enclitics

should not be appended to { a b, ā, ad, : ā Caesareque
 { apud, ob, sub : ob eamque rem
may be appended to **ex** and **in** { in eamque rem
 { inque eam rem
are (usually) appended to **all other** prepos.: dēque Caesare.

Note: Some prepositions retain their **original** use as **ad-verbs** in the following meanings:

	1.	2.	3.
ante	: <i>in front</i>	<i>previously</i>	—
post	: <i>behind</i>	<i>afterwards</i>	—
suprā	: <i>above</i>	<i>previously</i>	<i>beyond</i>
infrā	: <i>underneath</i>	—	—
cōram	: <i>in one's presence</i>	—	<i>personally</i>
prope	: <i>near</i>	—	<i>nearly</i>
extrā	: <i>without</i>	—	—
ūltrā	: <i>on the other side</i>	—	—
circum	: <i>all around</i>	—	—
circiter	: —	<i>about</i>	<i>about</i>

244. CONIUNCTIONES = CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions are words used to **connect** words, phrases, clauses or sentences. They are of two kinds:

Co-ordinate Conjunctions joining **co-ordinate elements of a sentence** (words, phrases, dependent clauses having the same grammatical relation, independent clauses), and

Subordinate Conjunctions joining **subordinate clauses to principal (leading) clauses**.

COORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

245. Coniunctiones copulativæ = Copulative Conjunctions

(Denoting union)

et	and
que (enclitic)	and
ac (only before consonants exc. c, g, q)	and
atque (before any letter)	and
etiam	also, even (91)
atque etiam	and also
quoque (postpositive)	also, too
nē - quidem (separated by the word emphasized)	{ not even not either
neque	and not; nor (146)

Uses of the preceding conjunctions

1. Three or more words are connected as follows :

avus **et** pater **et** filius : Polysyndeton

avus, pater, filius : Asyndeton

avus, pater, filius**que**

Abiit, excessit, ēvāsīt, ērūpīt.

2. **Que** unites things that belong to one another :

famēs sitisque, *hunger and thirst*

ferrō ignīque, *with fire and sword*

3. **Atque** and **ac** often emphasize the word following :

Is ā cōstantiā atque ā mente atque ā sē ipse discessit.

4. Et, – que, atque } may express : **and indeed**
(often with is)

Summa voluptās et (ea or quidem) sempiterna

multī clārī cīvēs *many famous citizens*

multī **et** clārī cīvēs **many** (and indeed) *famous c.*

5. **Etiam** nunc morāris ? *Even now ?* (emphasizing)

Quoque joins (usually without emphasis) words only :

Antonius quoque = Antonius etiam

6. Ac nē illud quidem { *and not even this*
 { *neither ... this*

7. **neque** enim (nōn enim) *for not*

neque tamen (nōn tamen) *yet not*

neque vērō (nōn autem) *but not*

neque enim quisquam *for nobody*

neque enim quicquam *for nothing*

neque enim ūlla causa *for no cause*

neque enim umquam *for never*

Note: Et nōn = ac nōn, et nēmō, et numquam etc. emphasize the negaton :

breve et nōn difficile *short and not difficult*

246. Coniunctiones disiunctivae : Disjunctive Conjunctions

(Denoting separation)

aut, vel, -ve, sive, or

(Ve, enclitic, is used to join words only.)

USES

1. **Aut** a) excludes: { *Hic vincendum aut moriendum*
 Here you must conquer or die
 b) corrects: { *Cūctī aut magna pars*
 All or (more accurately) a great part
2. **Vel, -ve, sive** permit choice (*velle*):

Zēnō vel Chrysippus *Z. or (if you choose) Ch.*

plūs minusve *more or less*

trēs quattuorve	<i>three or four</i>
-----------------	----------------------

Bacchus sive Līber *B. or (also called) L.*

vel potius, sive potius } or rather
sen potius, atque adeo }

Note : Vel, **as adverb**, = 1) *even*, 2) *the very*:

- 1) Id vel ex hōc cognōscī potest
- 2) Vel maximus (91, c).

247. Coniunctiones adversativae: Adversative Conjunctions

(Denoting opposition)

sed	but
vērūm (stronger than sed)	but
at (contrasting)	but
atquī (stronger than at)	but now; but anyhow
vērō (assūring)	however, but... indeed
autem	but; (often = now, and)
tamen (after a concessive)	however yet, nevertheless
vērūm enim vērō	but truly

USES

1. **Sed** **vērūm**, **ut**, **atque** are placed at the **beginning** of a sentence; **vērō**, **autem** are placed **after the first word**, prepositions not counted; **tamen** is placed either **before or after** the first word.

2. **At** is used to introduce **objections** (= *dīcēs*).
3. **Atquē** is used chiefly in argument.

4. **Autem** expresses of all adversative conjunctions, the weakest opposition; and may often be left untranslated.

Mūrī a u t e m hāc fere fōrmā sunt:

Now this is usually the form of their walls.

Note: “**Therefore**” may also be expressed by
adverbial phrases or adverbs:

Usually at the beginning

At any place

Ob eam rem (causam) Quam of rem Ideō (quod, ut)
hanc ob rem (causam) quōcircā idcircō (quod, ut)
eā dē rē (causā) quāpropter propterea (quod, ut)

Note: Ob **eam** rem etc. refer to something preceding or following (128),

quam ob rem etc. to something preceding,

ideō etc. to something following.

250. Combinations of Conjunctions

et - et { both - and
- as well as

neque - neque } neither - nor
nec - nec }

neque aut - aut } and neither - nor
et neque - neque }

nēmō..... } neque - neque no one..... neither - nor
aut - aut }

neque — et { on the one hand not
— and on the other hand

et — neque { on the one hand — and
on the other hand not

cum - tum both—and especially

tum - tum } now - now

modo - modo } sometimes - sometimes

nōn solum } sed etiam not only - but also
nōn modo } or vērū etiam

nōn modo } sed I won't say....., but
or nōn dicam }

Note: nōn modo or } sed nē - quidem,
nōn modo nōn }

= not only **not**, but not even....., when both members have the same predicate: Nōn modo extrā tēctum, sed nē extrā lectum quidem vidēbātur.

aut - aut (246) **either - or**

vel - vel (sīve - sīve) either - or

251. CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE INDICATIVE.

FINAL	
CONSECUTIVE	
TEMPORAL	<p>ut, ubi, simulatque (when den. a single action of the past.) } as soon as }</p> <p>postquam (Single action) after } Perfect</p> <p>antequam, priusquam } (Denoting time only) } before }</p> <p>dum, donec, quoad } (denoting time only) } until } Pres., Pf., 2d. F.</p> <p>dum, donec, quoad = quam diu (adv.): den. time only } as long as }</p> <p>cum (denoting time only): when } All tenses</p> <p>dum (d. present or past actions) while : Present</p>
CONCESSIVE	<p>etiāmsī, etsī, tametsī } although</p> <p>quamquam }</p>
COMPARATIVE	<p>ut, sicut as</p> <p>quam than</p>
CONDITIONAL	<p>Sī mentīris peccās If you lie, (whether you do so (Sī mentītus es, peccāvistī; or not,) you sin</p> <p>sī mentiēris, peccābis</p> <p>Sī nōn (negating a word) } if not</p> <p>Nisi (negating the whole condition) }</p>
CAUSAL	<p>quod (denoting actual cause) because (often = quia)</p> <p>quoniam, si quidem, quandoquidem } since indeed</p> <p>(denoting actual cause known to all) }</p>

CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

ut	} Denoting purpose . (Before comparatives) (After impendere)	(in order) that , (in order) to
nē		(in order) that not, not to, lest
quō		that the = ut eō
quōminus		(hinder) from, that not = ut eō minus

ut	} Denoting result Only after a leading clause with negative meaning	(so) that
ut nōn		(so) that not
quīn		(so) that not = ut nōn
		who not, that not = quī nōn quae nōn

antequam, priusquam } **before:** Pres., Impf., Plupf.
(Denoting time and purpose)

dum, donec, quoad } **until:** Pres., Impf.
(Denoting time and purpose)

cum (narrātivum) } **when** - Impf., Plupf.
(Den. time and circumstances)

cum (concessivum et adversativum) **although, whereas, while**
etiamsi quamvis **even if, although**
licet **although:** Pres., Perf.
ut, **granted that**
ut nōn, nē **granted that not, even if not**

quasi, tamquam, ac si, ut si } **as if, just as if,** { Tenses acc. to
velut si, tamquam si, proinde quasi } { Sequence of tenses

Si mentiāris, peccēs If you **should lie**, (let me suppose you
(Si mentitus sis, peccāveris) **you would sin;** [will),

Si mentīrēris, peccārēs If you **lied** (but you will not),

(Si mentitus essēs, peccāvissēs) **you would sin;**

dum modo, dum, modo provided, if only

dum modo ne, dum ne, modo ne if only not, provided only not

cum (denoting cause) **since**
quod, quoniam, (denoting the cause } **because, since indeed...**
not as the author's, but another's
opinion)

252. INTERIECTIONES : INTERJECTIONS

<i>Joy</i>	: iō! eue! o!	<i>hurra! huzza! o!</i>
<i>Sorrow</i>	: heu! eheu! prō! vae!	<i>alas! ah me! woe!</i>
<i>Astonishment</i>	: ēn! ecce! prō! hem!	<i>lo! behold! o! hem!</i>
<i>Disgust</i>	: prō! apage!	<i>fie! begone!</i>
<i>Praise</i>	: ēia! euge!	<i>bravo! well done!</i>
<i>Calling</i>	: heus! ohē! o!	<i>hey! ho!</i>
<i>Asseveration</i>	{ nē!	<i>truly!</i>
	{ mē dīus fidius(i.e. iuvet!)	<i>by the God of truth!</i>
	{ (mē) hercule!	<i>in truth! by Hercules!</i>
	{ ēdepol! ēcastor!	<i>by Pollux! by Castor!</i>

253. FORMATION OF WORDS

New words are formed by

Derivation, (adding of suffixes to the stems of words)
and **Composition**, (linking one word or its stem to another);
Hence there are:

Primitīva, Primitives and **Dērīvātīva**, Derivatives
Simplicia, Simple words and **Composita**, Compounds

I. DERIVATIVES**254. Substantives derived from Verbs**

tor, trīx (fem.)	}	the agent	victor, victrīx	<i>conqueror</i>
sor			dēfēnsor	<i>defender</i>
or	{	activity condition	clāmor	<i>shout</i>
			dolor	<i>pain</i>
tiō	{	action as in process	mōtiō	<i>a moving</i>
siō			obsessiō	<i>blockade</i>
us (gen. ūs)			mōtūs	<i>a moving</i>
men	{	means or instrument	nōmen	<i>name</i>
mentum			ornāmentum	<i>ornament</i>
bulum			vocābulum	<i>vocable</i>
culum			gubernāculum	<i>helm</i>
ulum			iaculum	<i>javelin</i>
crum			sepulcrum	<i>grave</i>
trum			arātrum	<i>plough</i>

255. Substantives derived from Substantives

culus, a, um	Dēminūtiva Deminutives (usually following the gender of the primitive)	flosculus	<i>floweret</i>
ulus, a, um		particula	<i>particle</i>
olus, a, um		opusculum	<i>little work</i>
ellus, a, um		puerulus	<i>little boy</i>
illus, a, um		filiolus	<i>little son</i>
		ocellus	<i>little eye</i>
		lapillus	<i>little stone, pebble</i>
idēs	Patronymica Greek noun of descent or relationship	Priamidēs	<i>Son of Priam</i>
idēs		Atridēs	<i>Son of Atreus</i>
adēs		Aenēadēs	<i>Son of Aeneas</i>
ēs		Nērēs	<i>Daughter of Nereus</i>
is		Atlantis	<i>Daughter of Atlas</i>
ias		Thaumantias	<i>Daughter of Thaumās</i>
ārium	Place where things (plants, animals...) are kept	aerārium	<i>treasury</i>
ētum		sēminārium	<i>seminary</i>
ile		quercētum	<i>oak grove</i>
		ovile	<i>sheepfold</i>
ina	Art or (its) place	medicīna	<i>art of healing</i>
		officīna	<i>workshop</i>
		piscīna	<i>fishpond</i>
ātus	Office	cōsulātus	<i>consulate</i>

256. Substantives derived from Adjectives

tās	Quality	pietās	<i>piety</i>
tūdō		fortitūdō	<i>bravery</i>
ia		audācia	<i>boldness</i>
itia		amicitia	<i>friendship</i>

257. Adjectives derived from Verbs

bundus	Meaning of present participle increased	moribundus	<i>dying</i>
		furibundus	<i>raging</i>
cundus	Inclination	irācundus	<i>wrathful</i>
āx		mendāx	<i>given to lying</i>
ulus		crēdulus	<i>credulous</i>

idus	Quality	calidus	warm
ilis	} Capacity (with passive meaning)	docilis	docile
bilis		mōbilis	movable

258. Adjectives derived from Common Nouns

eus	Material	aureus	golden
ius	} Belonging to	patrius(amor)	fatherly
icius		patricius	patrician
icus		bellicus	warlike
ālis		rēgālis	regal
ēlis		crūdēlis	cruel
īlis		puerīlis	boyish
āris		populāris	popular
ēnsis		castrēnsis	camp-
ester		campester	field-
ānus		urbānus	city-
īnus		dīvīnus	divine
nus		paternus(ager)	fatherly
īvus		aestīvus	summer
timus		maritimus	sea-
ōsus	} Fulness	artificiōsus	artistic
lentus		vīnolentus	drunk with wine
tus	Supplied with	{ barbātus	bearded
		{ aurītus	having ears

259. Adjectives derived from Proper Nouns

ānus	} Names of Persons	Sullānus	of Sulla
īnus		Verrīnus	of Verres
ēus (īus)		Epicurēus	Epicurean
icus		Homēricus	Homeric
icus	} Names of Nations	Germānicus	German
ius		Thrācius	Thracian
ānus	} Names of Places	Thebānus	Theban
īnus		Amerīnus	of Ameria
ās		Arpīnās	of Arpinum
ius		Corinthius	Corinthian
aeus		Smyrnaeus	of Smyrna
ēnsis		Cannēnsis	of Cannae

260. Adjectives derived from Adjectives

lus	Dēminūtīva	{ misellus parvulus	wretched little
-----	------------	------------------------	--------------------

261. Adjectives derived from Adverbs

ernus	{ Relating to	hodiernus	of to-day
ternus		hesternus	of yesterday
tinus		crāstinus	of to-morrow
tīnus		intestīnus	internal

262. Verbs derived from Verbs

scere	Incohātīva:	obdormiscere	fall asleep
āre	{ Frequentātīva and Intēnsīva: repeti- tion or intensity; usu. from pf. part.	cantāre	sing
itāre		cantitāre	sing repeatedly
sāre		cursāre	{ run hither and thither
sitāre		cursitāre	
urīre	Dēsīderātīva:	ēsūrīre	desire to eat

263. Verbs derived from Nouns

āre	Usu. transitive	{ vulnerāre exsulāre (intr.)	wound live in exile
ēre	Only intransitive:	flōrēre (intr.)	bloom
īre	{ Trans. and intrans.	{ saevīre (intr.)	rage
ere		{ metuere	fear

264. Adverbs derived from Verbs

certātim	emulously	cursim	speedily
separātim	separately	praesertim	especially
stātim	instantly	raptim	hurriedly
caesim	by cuts	sēnsim	gradually

265. Adverbs derived from Nouns

nōminātim	expressly; by name	antīquitus	of old
gradātim	step by step	funditus	utterly
virītim	man by man	rādīcitus	radically
furtim	by stealth	penitus	thoroughly

II. COMPOUND WORDS

266. Compound Substantives

Two nouns, the second one with the form of a verbal stem	}	naufragrium	<i>shipwreck</i>
túbicen		<i>trumpeter</i>	
signifer		<i>standard - bearer</i>	

Two nouns	:	triennium	<i>space of three years</i>
-----------	---	-----------	-----------------------------

Preposition and Noun	}	dēdecus	<i>disgrace</i>
		interrēx	<i>interrex</i>

Note: Rēs pūblica,	<i>republic, state</i>	}	are no compounds
iūs iūrandum,	<i>oath</i>		
senātūs cōsultum,	<i>decree of the senate</i>		

267. Compound Adjectives

Two nouns, second one with verbal stem	}	mortifer	<i>death-dealing</i>
		particeps	<i>sharing</i>

Two nouns	magnanimus	<i>great-souled</i>
-----------	------------	---------------------

Preposition and Noun,	āmēns	<i>senseless</i>
-----------------------	-------	------------------

or other particle and N.:	dēmēns	<i>foolish</i>
---------------------------	--------	----------------

1. ā, dē, dis, ex, in,	sōcors	<i>dull</i>
nec, sē, sō, vē	vēcors	<i>without understanding</i>
denoting "not"	indignus	<i>unworthy</i>

2, sub = somewhat	}	subobscūrus	<i>rather obscure</i>
		subnūbilus	<i>rather cloudy</i>

3. per, prae = very	}	permagnus	<i>very great</i>
		praeclārus	<i>very famous</i>

Adverb and Verb:	benevolus	<i>benevolent</i>
------------------	-----------	-------------------

268. Compound Verbs

Substantive and Verb:	aedificāre	<i>build</i>
-----------------------	------------	--------------

Adjective and Verb:	amplificāre	<i>enlarge</i>
---------------------	-------------	----------------

Verb and Verb:	calefacere	<i>make warm</i>
----------------	------------	------------------

Adverb and Verb:	maledīcere	<i>speak ill of</i>
------------------	------------	---------------------

Preposition and Verb:	{	abdere	<i>put away, hide</i>
ā, ab, abs, as = away	{	absterrere	<i>frighten away</i>
	{	asportare	<i>carry away</i>
ō, ob, obs, os	{	againt	
	{	towards	
	{	obrepere	<i>approach towards</i>
	{	offerre	<i>offer</i>
	{	ostendere	<i>show</i>
com, con, cō	{	together	
	{	strongly	
	{	cōferre	<i>carry together</i>
	{	cognoscere	<i>learn to know thoro'ly</i>
dē	{	down	
	{	completely	
	{	dēicere	<i>throw down</i>
	{	dēvincere	<i>conquer completely</i>
Inseparable Particle and Verb:	{	ambire	<i>go around</i>
amb, am = around	{	amburere	<i>burn around</i>
	{	amplecti	<i>embrace</i>
	{	amputare	<i>cut around, cut off</i>
au = away	{	aufugere	<i>flee away</i>
dis, dī, dir	{	apart	
	{	asunder	
	{	dīrimere	<i>part</i>
	{	dissolvere	<i>dissolve</i>
sē = apart	{	sēcernere	<i>distinguish</i>

Note: **Phonetic changes** occurring in the composition of words appear especially in the composition of verbs; e. g.:

Assimilation of consonants: āggredī from adgredī

Elision of consonants: trādere from trānsdere

Contraction of vowels: cōgere from coagere

Weakening of vowels : {

conclūdere from conclaudere

concidere from concaedere

conicere from coniacere

269.

COMPOUND ADVERBS

comminus	=	con manus	<i>in close contest</i>
forsitan	=	fors sit an	<i>perhaps</i>
hodiē	=	hōc diē	<i>to-day</i>
īlicō	=	in locō	<i>instantly</i>
intereā	=	inter eā	<i>meanwhile</i>
nūdiustertius	=	nunc diēs tertius	<i>the day before yesterday</i>
profectō	=	prō factō	<i>actually, by all means</i>
scīlicet	=	scī(re) licet	<i>evidently, of course</i>

Note: The meaning of place denoted by locō and eā (163) is changed into a meaning of time in īlicō and intereā.

270.

Appendix

1. Corresponding transitive and intransitive verbs

Transitive	Intransitive	Transitive	Intransitive
excitāre	expergīscī	caedere	cadere
fugāre	fugere	occidere	occidere
augēre	accrēscere	cafacere	calēre
minuere	dēcrēscere	obstupefacere	stupēre
accendere	ardēre	patefacere	patēre
combūrere	cōnflāgrāre	assuēfacere	{ assuēvisse { (assuēscere)
iacere	iacēre		
cōgere	convenīre	cōstituere	{ stāre { (cōsistere)
suspendere	pendēre		

2. English and Latin words of similar sound

convince	persuādēre	convincere, <i>convict</i>
digest,	concoquere	dīgerere, <i>arrange</i>
discuss,	disputāre	dīscutere, <i>dispel</i>
suspect,	sūspicāre	sūspicere, <i>look up to</i>

3. Latin Reflexives

sē cōferre,	<i>go</i>	sē mergere,	<i>dive</i>
sē efferre,	<i>become haughty</i>	sē recipere,	<i>retreat</i>
sē iungere,	<i>join</i>	sē subducere,	<i>withdraw</i>

4. Similar Latin forms

edere	ēdere	fissus	fīsus
pōssidere	possidēre	cēpī	coepī
cōndimus	condīmus	ābscidī	abscīdī
vīncimus	vincīmus	rētūlit	rētulit
prōdimus	prōdīmus	victūrus	vīctūrus
āddimus	adīmus	paritūrus	pāritūrus
réddimus	redīmus	quaéris	quéris
venīmus	vēnīmus	ēducō	ēducō
vēnimus	vēniimus	appellō, serō	appellō, serō
opertus	oppertus	fundō, mandō	fundō, mandō
óblitus	oblītus	cōnsternō	cōnsternō

Principal Rules of Syntax

(A *Complete Grammar* will be issued in a separate volume.)

271. AGREEMENT OF THE PREDICATE

1. With one subject

The predicate agrees with its subject

- a. In **number** { *Nōn is sum quī terrar*
and **person** { *nōn iī estis quī terreāmini*
- b. In **gender** { *Usus (tempus) est magister*
and **case,** { *Vita est magistra*
(if possible) { *Invidia glōriae assidua comes est*
 { *Athēnae doctrinārum inventricēs sunt*

272. With two or more subjects

- a. If **all** the subjects (asyndeton or joined by **et**, - que or atque) are **living** beings and **precede** their predicate, it usually agrees with all subjects conjointly:

It is **plural** in number: *Pater et frāter mortuī sunt.*

prefers the 1st person : *Ego et pater tuus (tū) valēmus*

the 2d person : *Tū et mater tua valētis*

prefers the **m. gender** : { *Māter et soror mortuae sunt.*
 { *Pater et māter mortuī sunt.*

- b. In all other cases the predicate usually agrees with the nearest subject:

Et tū et illi sciunt.

Mortua est māter et pater.

Pater mortuus est et māter.

Impedimenta et equitatus secūtus est.

Ignis et aēr facillimē pellitur.

But also: *Aēr, ignis, aqua, terra eī pārent.*

273. Agreement of substantive and adjective modifiers of subject or object added to the predicate.

Personal substantives denoting **age** or **office**, and adjectives (participles) expressing **state** or **order** agree when used predicatively, in gender, number and case, with their nouns:

- a. *Cicerō id puer, senex, cōsul.... fēcit*

.... **when** a boy, **in** his old age, **as** a consul....

- b. *Tē vīvum cōmbūrere cōnātī sunt,*

They tried to burn you alive.

Similarly :

praesēns	absēns	<i>in my, your, his presence</i>
laetus	tristis	<i>with joy, sorrowfully</i>
āversus	adversus	<i>from behind, in front</i>
rārī	cōnfertī	<i>scattered, in compact order</i>
prīmus, postrēmus	vēnit	<i>the first...to come, who came</i>
Of two: prior, posterior	vēnit	<i>he came first, last</i>
ūnus = sōlus	vēnit	<i>he was the only one who came</i>
patriae sē tōtōs	dēdērunt	<i>they gave them. entirely</i>

Distinguish prīmōs vōs **from** prīmus vōs docuī (Cf. 115)

Notes:

- 274. a.** Ut puer bene dīcis *for a boy...* (restriction)
 Ut puer id facere nequis *as a boy...* (cause)
 Ut puer loqueris } *like a boy...* (comparison)
 Quasi, tamquam puer l. }

b. The following expressions may be used instead of predicates:

Hostium locō, nōmine, munerō, prō hostibus: *as enemies*

c. Distinguish the attributive and predicative uses of

summus, medius, infimus, prīmus and extrēmus:

summus mōns } *the highest mountain* (when attribute)
 } *the **top** of the mountain* (when predicative)
 per mediam urbem (position!) *through the middle of the city*
 prīmā, mediā, extrēmā hieme *at the beginning of winter*

275. Agreement of Attributes with their Substantives

1. Attributive Adjectives (31); 2. Appositives.

1. Agrī omnēs et maria;

or: omnēs agrī et maria omnia.

2. Urbem Syracūsās cēperunt.

276.**Position of Attributes**

1. **Adjective** attributes stand oftener **before** than after their nouns:

magna urbs

Marathōnia pugna

2. **Substantive** attributes (appositives) are usually placed **after**:

Hannibal **vir** fortissimus

Cicerō **cōsul**

Exceptions: Imperātor, emperor:

Imperātor Titus

urbs, (rēx, flūmen)

urbs Rōma

3. **Praising** and blaming attributes, except surnames, are added by means of *ille* or of appellatives:

Opulentissima illa Corinthus	} <i>rich Corinth</i>
Corinthus, urbs opulentissima	
fortissimus ille Hannibal	(<i>the</i>) <i>brave Hannibal</i>
But: Alexander Magnus	<i>Alexander the Great</i>

4. **Attributes with prepositions** are, in general, replaced by genitives or adjectives; when used, they are commonly added by connectives.

- a. *trānsitus Alpium* *march across the Alps*
bellum Germānōrum *war against(w.) the Germans*
bellum Gallicum *war with Gaul*
- b. *pugna ad Marathōnem facta* (connective a participle)
nōbilis illa *ad Cannās pugna* (connective another attrib.)
insula, quae est *contra Massiliam* (connective a relative.)
- c. *cum dignitatē ōtium* *honorable leisure*
homō sine honōre *a man without honor*
signa ex aere *statues of brass*
liber dē ducibus *book about generals*
reditus in patriam *return to one's native place*
5. Appositives to possessive pronouns are put in the genitive and inserted:

<i>tuum discipulī officium</i>	<i>your duty as a pupil</i>
<i>tuum ipsius officium</i>	<i>your own duty</i>

277.

AGREEMENT OF PRONOUNS

Determinatives, (demonstratives) and relatives agree with their **antecedents** in gender and number; their case depends upon their relation in the clauses to which they belong:

- a. *Magna vīs est in virtūtibus; eās excitā, sī dormiunt.*
Virtūtēs quārum vīs est magna excitandae sunt.
Flūmen quod vocāmus Rhēnum altissimum est.
- b. *Petō ut eum diligās; erit id mihi grātum.*
Sapientius secundam quam adversam fortūnam tulit,
(id) quod difficiliter putātur.

278. However, determinatives, interrogatives and relatives (as subjects or accusative objects) always agree with the predicate appellative to which they refer:

Is est honor**That** is honor**Eum** dicō honōrem**That** I call honor**Quem** dicimus **honōrem**, sī iste nōn est?Belgae **quam** tertiam esse **partem** Galliae dixerāmus,...N., **quī** est vicus, **quae** est urbs, **quod** est oppidumBut: **Quid** (predicate) est honor?*What is (the definition) of honor?**Note:* Relatives and determinatives sometimes agree with the appositives of their antecedents:

Flūmen Rhēnus, quī or quod.....:

eum or id trānsiērunt.

279. Cōnstructiō ad sēnsu:

Senātus populusque Rōmānus (i. e. rēs pūbl. R.) dēcrēvit.

Pars, multitudō, mīlia (i. e. multī) **caesī sunt**.

Rēx et clāssis (i. e. clāssiārī) profectī sunt.

Aēr et ignis et aqua et terra pīma (i. e. initia) **sunt**.Lībera cīvītās et rēx (i. e. haec) inimīca inter sē **sunt**.*Note:* Predicates usually agree with appositives of city (and river) names, and with predicate substantives, when nearer to them than to the subject:

Corinthus, tōtīus Graeciae lūmen, exstīnctum est.

Nōn omnis error stultitia dicēda est;

or: nōn omnis error dicēdus est stultitia.

280.**THE NOMINATIVE****1.** Every **subject** expressed by a noun (9) is put in the nominative: **Deus** est, *God exists**Notes:* a. In every verbum finitum (169) the subject is expressed by the personal ending (176):

Caesar vēn-ī

Venī-tō

Venia-t

I, Caesar, came**You** shall come**He** shall come**b.** The indefinite subject "*they, people, one etc.*" is rendered by the passive, the 3d and 1st pl. and quis:

Laudor, laudāris.....

People praise me:.....

itur, itum est.....

they go, went.....

dicunt, trādunt, ferunt

it is said, related.....

sī quis dicat, dicit.....

if one should say.....*Also:* dicās (dixeris)**every one** would say

dicerēs, putārēs

one would have said....

2. Every **predicate noun** takes the nominative:

Sum, fīō, maneō	} <i>I am, become, remain,</i>
videor, beātus	
Appellor, habeor	} <i>I am called, regarded</i>
putor iustus	

Note: The **predicate noun** is also called the **subjective complement**.

281. Esse, when used as a complete or independent verb, means **exist, feel, be**, and may be modified by adverbs:

Fuit (*he lived*) ante Rōmam conditam

Sic est = sic sē rēs habet, *so it is*

Mihi melius est (**feel**) Praesto es, **be at hand**

282. THE ACCUSATIVE

Transitive verbs (so called, because their action usually passes over—trānsit—from the subject to an object) have an **object accusative** which becomes subject nominative in the passive (205, Note):

Active : Domum incendit

Passive: Domus ab eō incēnsa est

283. OBJECT ACCUSATIVE

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. Adiuvō, effugiō tē | <i>I help you, escape you</i> |
| imitor, sequor te | <i>I imitate, follow you</i> |
| adeō tē supplex | <i>I approach you humbly</i> |
| adeō terram, periculum | <i>I visit....., undergo.....</i> |
| conveniō tē | <i>I visit, meet you</i> |
| vōx, vīrēs mē dēficiunt | <i>my voice, my strength gives out</i> |

2. Verbs compounded with **circum, praeter, trāns**:
- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| castra circumīre | <i>march around, surround</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------------|

3. Verbs denoting (painful) Emotion:

dolēre, maerēre rem , rē	<i>grieve at, mourn over</i>
lūgēre, lamentārī rem , dē..	<i>bewail, weep over</i>
querī, horrērē rem , dē...	<i>complain of, shudder at</i>
dēspērāre rēi, rem , dē...	<i>despair of</i>
also rīdēre, mīrārī rem	<i>laugh at, wonder at</i>
But: gaudēre, laetārī rē	<i>be glad of, rejoice in</i>
exultāre, glōriārī rē	<i>exult over, glory in</i>

4. Neuter pronouns and (numeral) adjectives as objects:

- a. Multum **possum, valeō** *I have great power, influence*
 illud (dē eā rē) **dubitō** *I doubt about that*
 hōc (hāc rē) **gaudeō** *I am glad of this*
 id ūnum, nihil aliud } **studeo** *this is my only aim*
 (nūllī aliī rēi)
- b. cētera tibi assentior *I agree with you on the other pts.*
 utrumque vōbīs persuadeō *I convince you of both.....*

5. Cognate accusative

servitūtē servīre *serve as a slave*
 doctrīnam redolēre *savor of the school*

6. Attributive and adverbial accusative

- a. Id aetātis (eā aetate) fīlius *a son of that age*
 b. Id temporis (eō tempore) vēnit *he came at that time*
 multum esse in *be much engaged in*
 magnam partem *to a great extent*
 nihil, summum *not at all, at most*

7. Paenitet... (pg. 104), decet..., iuvat...(pg. 105)

TWO ACCUSATIVES

284. Object and Predicate Accusative

Taken by verbs of

a: **showing** oneself, or **proving as**, b: **having** etc. as
 c: **regarding as**, d: **calling**, e: **making**

Active

Passive

- a. Virum, fortem tē praestā
 ignāvum. fortem sē praebuit
 fortiter, ignāvē sē **gessit** } *no passive*
 } *praestāre requires a praising*
 } *attribute, sē gerere, an adverb*
- b. Habeō tē amīcum
I have a friend in you } *no passive: see c.*
- dō, accipiō vōs obsidēs
 liberī datī sunt obsidēs
- c. Habeō tē **prō** amīcō
 (in) amīcī locō...(274, b) } *habēris ā mē amīcus*
 } *prō amīcō, in amīcīs*
- Caesarem bonum ducem
 putō, dūcō, existimō.....
 Caesar bonus dux
 putātur, existimātur.....
- d. Tē patrem appellō, vocō.....
 pater appellāris, vocāris....

- e. Tē cōsulem facimus cōsul fis
 Avaritia vītā miserā avāritiā vitā misera
reddīt **fit** (Redditur = *given back*)
 Numam rēgem dēligunt, creant Numa rēx creātus est

285. TWO OBJECT ACCUSATIVES

1. Verbs compounded with *trāns* denoting **transport** (*trāducere*, *traicere*, *trānsportāre*) may have a double accusative:

Active

Passive

Exercitum Axonam trādūxit exercitus Axonam trāductus est

2. Tē artem doceō (**teach**) { artem ā mē **disces**
 But { arte ā mē ērudīris

- Tē dē rē { certiorē faciō dē rē { certior fīs ā mē
 { or doceō (inform) { docēris ā mē
 3. Tē rem or dē rē cēlō { dē clāde cēlāris, *the defeat*
 (*keep in ignorance about*) { is **concealed** from you
 4. Te rem (re) - poscō, flāgitō { pāx ā tē poscitur.....
 a tē rem p., f., **demand** {
 5. Only with a neuter pronoun or num. adj. as 2d accus.:

Id nōs cōgit nātūra —

Haec tē (ad) - moneō dē hīs rēbus admonēris

Id tē ōrō (inter)- rogō, ask illud rogor

6. Tē **sententiam** rogō { pīnceps sententiam rogāris
 (*I ask your official vote*) {

But

(Inter) rogō tē dē rē { (inter) rogāris dē..., quid....

Quaerō ā (ex, dē) tē, quid.... { *your private opinion...*

286. ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE

The *accūsātivus cum infīnītīvō* may be used either as subject or as object:

Deum esse cōstatRēx iubet tē abire

Subject of cōstat

Object of iubet

It is certain that God exists The king wants you to go

Note: These accusatives (as *Deum* and *tē*) are considered as subjects, because, translated into English, they can be made subjects of clauses.

4. With *volō, nōlō, mālo, cupiō*,
 a. when the two verbs have different subjects:
 volō eum hōc facere **I want him to do it**
 volō hōc facere **I want to do it (myself)**
 hōc factum volō } **I want this done**
 = *hōc fieri volō* }
 b. sometimes, when both verbs have the same subject,
 esp. with *esse* } *mē clēmentem esse cupiō*
 or an infin. passive } *sē amārī quam timērī māvult.*
 Also: *Volō, mālō ut.....*; *velim mihi dīcās, please tell me.*
- 5.. *Assuēfaciō tē pārēre* *I accustom you to obey*
cōgō, prohibeō tē ire *I compel, prevent.....*
arguo, insimulō *I accuse*
 arguō tē hōc fēcisse
 But *accūsō tē, quod hōc fēcēris*

289. Remarks:

Meaning of the Infinitive according to 171, Note:

- a. *Audiō tē dīcere* *I hear (that) you say*
Audiēbam tē dīcere *I heard you say (= that you said)*

Note: With *meminī* (= *memoriā teneō*) the pres. inf. denotes also previous action:

- meminī tē dīcere* *I remember that you said*
 b. *sciō tē dixisse* *I know that you said*
 scīvī tē dixisse *I knew you had said*
 c. *sciō tē dictūrum esse* *I know you will (are going to) say*
 scīvī tē dictūrum esse *I knew you would (were going to) say*

Note: Instead of the *future infinitive fore ut* or *futūrum esse ut* (with the pres. and imperf. subj.) **may** be used; it **must** be used with verbs that have no participial stem:

- Sciō tē laudātum irī* = *sciō fore ut laudēris*
scīvī tē laudātum irī = *scīvī fore ut laudārēris*
 But only: *spērō fore ut discās*

290. Spērō, iūrō, minor, polliceor, cōnfidō Iubeō, vetō

A future action must be expressed by a **future** infinitive (*posse* and *velle* denote the future); *iubeō* and *vetō*, however, always take the present infinitive:

Spērō eam sūspciōnem falsam **esse**, *I hope = I wish*
 Spērō mē tibi causam probāvisse, *I hope = I think*
 Spērō mē hōc adeptūrum **esse**, *I hope*
 Dicit sē **posse, velle** alteram porticum aedificāre

Iubeō vetō eōs disrēdere, addūcī

291. To avoid ambiguity, the infinitive passive is is often used:

“Dīcō tē eōs vincere posse” *is ambiguous*
 Dīcō eōs ā tē **vīncī** posse *excludes doubt*

292. The subject accusative is commonly not omitted; impersonal verbs cannot express it.

Iūrās tē id factūrum **esse** *you swear to do it*
 iūrat sē (refl.!) id f^rum *he swears to do it*
 videō pluere *I see it rain*

293. AGREEMENT

Nouns predicated of or compared with the subject accusative must agree with it, when the verb is the same:

Cōnstat mē prius hūc vēnisse quam tē, or : quam tū vēnistī
 ait mē idem facere quod illum, or : quod ille faciat

294. TRANSLATION OF THE A. c. ī.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. Audiō eum loquī | <i>I hear him speak</i> |
| Hannibalem ad Cannās | <i>We know (that) Hannibal</i> |
| vīcissee accēpimus | <i>was victorious at Cannae</i> |
| Deum esse cōnstat | <i>God's existence is certain</i> |
| dīcit sē scīre | <i>he affirms to know</i> |
| 2. Negō mē id fēcisse | <i>I affirm I did not do it</i> |
| nōlō, vetō id fierī | <i>I desire, command that....</i> |
| nōn putō (position!) | <i>I think that... not... [not...]</i> |
| appāret eum vīcissee | <i>he has evidently conquered</i> |

295. A. (c. ī.) IN EXCLAMATION

of surprise, indignation, regret...

Mē miserum! *O wretched me!*
 tē (or tēne) hōc dīcere! } *You to say this!*
 = tū (or tūne) ut hōc dicās!

296. NOMINATIVUS CUM INFINITIVO

Those verbs which take the A. c. ī in the active, usually require the N. c. ī. in the passive, especially :

1. **Videor** hōc facere
*{ I am **seen** doing this*
*{ I **seem** to do this*
*{ It **appears** as though...*

vidētur sibi beātus (esse) *he believes himself happy*
 vidēmur (nōbīs) hōc *we flatter ourselves with*
 bene fēcisse *having done this well*
2. Fertur, trāditur, feruntur, trāduntur (3d pers.):
 Poēta caecus fuisse trāditur.
 Trāditum est poētam caecum fuisse.
3. **Iubeor, vector, sinor; putor, existimor, dīcor:**
 Iussī sunt, vētītī sunt abīre

Note: The A. c. ī is used with :

Mihi dīcitur, vērē, rēctē, nōn sine causā dīcitur;
 dīcendum est, dictum est, dīcī potest; trāditum est;
 Dīceris dēceptus esse.
 But: Rēctē dīcitur tē dēceptum esse.

297. THE GENITIVE

1. Amor patris
{ love of one's father : pater amat : subject
{ love for one's father : patrem amat : object
- 2, Hōrum virtūs minor est quam māiōrum *than that of.....*
3. Meī, tuī, similis *similar to me, to you*
 patris simillimus *the very picture of his father*
 patrī similis *similar to his father*
4. Nōmen carendī *the word "to want"*
 ēius causā (grātiā) *for his sake*
 mēā, suā causā *for my, his (refl.) sake*
5. Satis, parum labōris *enough, too little exertion*
 id labōris = is labor *this degree of exertion*
 multum damnī
{

 magnum damnum
}

 aliquid novī or novum *something new*
 nihil ūtile, quid aliud? *nothing useful, what else?*

12. Remind, remember, forget

Admoneō, commoneō tē dē rē, reī, id } **remind** (tr.)
But commonefaciō tē reī, id }

Meminī, reminiscor tuī, rem, reī, id } **remember** (i.)
But recordor dē tē, rem, reī, id }

Oblīvīscor tuī, rem, reī, id = **forget** (i.)

Note: Meminī **eum**, *I remember him yet (I knew him)*

Meminī **ēius**, *I remember (think of) him now*

Tuī mihi **in mentem venit** = Tuī meminī

Multa (nom.) mihi in mentem veniunt

298.

THE DATIVE

1. Nōn **tibi** sōlī nātus es ...**for yourself alone**
tibi bellum faciō, īferō *I begin war **against** you*
rēs **mihi** ūtilis, id ōnea, } ...*useful to me for...*
apta, necessariā est **ad** hōc }
Quid sibi hōc vult? *What is the meaning of this?*
Quid tibi vīs, īnsāne? *What do you aim at, madman?*
2. Medeor, **persuādeō**; *heal, convince (persuade)*
nūbō (pg. 91), parcō, studeō, *marry, spare, take pains*
male dīcō, supplicō, *speak ill of, beg humbly*
obtrectō and **invidēō** *work against, envy*
Tibi, eī invidētur *you, he is envied*
eius glōriāe invidētur *they envy (him) his glory*
mihi persuāsī } *I am convinced*
mihi persuāsum est }
sibi persuāsīt } *he is convinced*
eī persuāsim est }
tibi persuādē *be convinced*
hīs persuādērī nōn potest *they cannot be persuaded*
3. **Adsum** opem ferō } *I help you*
auxilior, succurrō etc. tibi }
But iuvō, adiuvō tē }
Hōc tibi auferō, **adimō**, } *I take this away from you*
ēripīō, dētrahō etc. }
Tibi **dictō audiēns** sum *I obey you promptly*

4. Is tibi succēdit fīnibus appropinquāmus imperant omnibus gentibus praeficiō tē exercitui tuīs rēbus timeō tibi timeō, prōvideō mihi crēde (Position!)	<i>He is your successor we draw near the boundary they rule over all nations I place you in command of... I fear for your interests I fear for, take care of you trust me</i>
5. Dō nō { tibi pecūniam { tē pecūniā Circumdō { urbī mūrū { urbem mūrō	<i>I give you money I present you with money I put a wall around the city I surround the city with...</i>
6. Est mihi liber } habeō librum } ēius est liber, meus est But in patre prūdētia est } pater summā p' ā est }	<i>I have a book he owns, I own a book the father has great prudence (Qualities require in.)</i>
Mihi Caesar nōmen est } mihi Caesarī nōmen est }	<i>my name is Caesar (= Caesar appellor)</i>

7. Dative of Abstract Substantives

a) with **esse** and **dare**, expressing **effect**,

(often accompanied by a second dative answering the question "For whom?")

Nāvis magnō ūsuī erat id magnō argumentō est id mihi praesidiō est tua salūs mihi cūrae est cuī bonō ? Id tibi laudī, vitiō dō id tibi crīminī dō, vertō id tibi ignāviae dō, dūcō	<i>The ship was very useful it serves as a striking proof it affords me protection { your welfare is a care to me { I take an interest in your welf. to whose advantage is it ? I praise, blame you for it I reproach you with it I impute it to you as cowardice</i>
---	--

b) with **mittere**, **relinquere**, **venire**, expressing **purpose**:

Atticīs auxiliō vēnit tibi eās subsidiō mittō colloquiō diem dīcō receptuī canō	<i>he came to the aid of... I send them to your relief I set a day for the conference I sound a retreat</i>
--	---

299. Purpose usually is expressed by
ad, causā, ut, quī, dē, the supine in um:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a. Ad pācem hortor | <i>I exhort to peace</i> |
| ad perseverandū inflammō | <i>I rouse to perseverance</i> |
| pecūniam dō | <i>I give money</i> |
| ad emendās sententiās | <i>to buy votes</i> |
| b. Reī publicae causā, grātiā | <i>for the interest of the state</i> |
| animī causā | <i>for the sake of amusement</i> |
| agendī causā | <i>for the sake of acting</i> |
| ingenīi acuendī causā | <i>to sharpen the intellect</i> |
| suī liberandī causa | <i>to free themselves</i> |
| c. Adducō tē ut abeās | <i>I induce you to go</i> |
| d. Lēgātōs mīserunt quī | <i>they sent legates to accuse</i> |
| eum absentem accūsarent | <i>him in his absence</i> |
| e. Lēgātōs dē pāce mitto | <i>...to treat about peace</i> |
| f. Cubitum eō | <i>I go to bed</i> |

THE ABLATIVE

300. The ablātīvus sēparātīvus with ab is required by
sē - and dis -, the **transitive abstinēre, protect,**
abhor, deter, and liberāre ab homine:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sēiungō ab, sēparō ab | <i>separate from</i> |
| discēdō ab or ex urbe | <i>leave the city</i> |
| manūs ā scelere abstineō | <i>keep my hands from...</i> |
| dēfendō, prohibeō, tueor | |
| tē ab iniuriā | <i>protect you against...</i> |
| iniuriām ā tē | <i>ward it off from you</i> |
| abhorreō ab istō scelere | <i>shudder at this crime</i> |
| id abhorret ā meis mōribus | <i>is remote, differs from...</i> |
| dēterreō tē ā pōpositō | <i>deter you from your plan</i> |

301. All other verbs of separation may take the **bare**
 ablative:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Liberāre metū, periculō | <i>free from fear, from danger</i> |
| nūdāre mūrū dēfēnsōribus | <i>strip the wall of defenders</i> |
| vacāre culpā, metū, dolore | <i>be free from guilt, fear...</i> |
| But huic ūnī negōtiō vacō | <i>devote myself to...</i> |
| carere amicis, patriā | <i>have no..., must do without...</i> |
| abstinere, supersedere proeliō | <i>refrain from, avoid</i> |
| (ē) vitā, patriā cedere | <i>die, leave the country</i> |
| (ē) castris cōpiās educere | <i>lead the troops out of.....</i> |
| (ab) iniuriā (sē) abstinere | <i>refrain from wrong</i> |

302. With comparatives the **ablātīvus comparātiōnis** may be used instead of *quam* with any nominative or accusative, if no ambiguity arises; in sentences with negative meaning it is preferred to *quam*; with relatives it is employed exclusively:

Patre = quam pater or **quam patrem**

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. Filius māior patre est | <i>The son is greater than the fa.</i> |
| sciō eum māiōrem patre esse | <i>I know that he is gr. than...</i> |
| 2. Lacrimā nihil citius arēscit | { <i>Nothing dries more</i> |
| | { <i>quickly than a tear</i> |
| 3. Amīcitiā quā nihil | <i>Friendship, than which</i> |
| melius habēmus | <i>we have nothing better</i> |
| Melle dulcior, lūce clārior | <i>honey - sweet, clear as light</i> |
| Opīniōne celerius = | { <i>faster than one would think</i> |
| celerius quam opīniō fuit | |
| Aequō plūs = | { <i>more than is fair</i> |
| plūs quam pār est | |

Note: Similarly: *spē*, *expectātiōne*, *solitō*, *necessāriō*.

303. Plūs, amplius, longius, more than, and minus, less than, are often inserted before words of number or measure without change of construction:

Plūs annum (321) in urbe est ... **more than** a year

Note: With *annōs nātus māior* and *minor* are often used:

Puer māior (minor) decem annōs nātus (321)
 or puer māior (minor) decem annīs (302)
 or puer plūs (minus) decem annōs nātus (303)

304. The ablātīvus sociātivus

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. A Socrate ērudītus | <i>Educated by Socrates</i> |
| ā canibus laniātus | <i>torn by dogs</i> |
| ā nātūrā datum | <i>given by nature (personified)</i> |
| ab exercitū oppressus | <i>...by... (pers. collective subst.)</i> |
| 2. Eius impulsū | <i>At his instigation</i> |
| mōre, cōsuētūdine | <i>according to custom...</i> |
| irā incēnsus | <i>in his anger</i> |
| inopiā adductus, coactus | <i>because of his want</i> |
| tīmōre perterritus | <i>out of fear</i> |
| nuntiō commōtus | <i>at this news</i> |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. Rē, rē vērā
nōmine, speciē
meā sententiā | <i>In reality, in truth
by name, in appearance
in my opinion</i> |
| 4. Quō-eō=quantō-tantō | <i>the-the (with comparatives)</i> |
| 5. Cum virtūte }
-honestē } vīvere | <i>live virtuously</i> |
- Note:* Cum, in the ablative of *manner*, is always omitted with modō, ratiōne, mente, mōre, iūre, lēge; usually also with other ablatives modified by adjectives:
- | | |
|--|---|
| Magnā (cum) cūrā
eā conditionē, lēge | <i>very carefully
under this condition</i> |
| 6. Cum patre abiit
cum febrī rediit | With = accompanied by.....
<i>he returned with a fever</i> |
| 7. Fruī, ūtī, fungī rē
nītī; vēscī, potīrī rē
glōriārī, laetārī etc. rē | <i>See n. 212, pg. 102.
See n. 212-213.
See n. 283, 3, pg. 141</i> |
| 8. Assuētus labōre
insuētus labōris
currū vehī, pedibus īre
proeliō vincere, superārī
pilā, tībīs lūdere | <i>Accustomed to toil
unused to hard work
ride, go on foot
conquer in, lose the battle
play ball, the flute</i> |
| 9. Afficio tē honōre, dolōre
Afficiō tē praemiō, sepultūrā | <i>I honor you, cause you pain
I reward you, bury you</i> |
| 10. Laude dignus
suā sorte contentus
virtūte praeditus
frētus, cōnfisus virtūte | <i>praiseworthy
satisfied with his lot
virtuous
relying upon his strength</i> |

305. Ablātīvus et genetīvus **quālītātis**

(Used with attributes only)

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Homō humili stātūra (est) | <i>(he is) a man of low stature</i> |
| vīcus oppidī magnitūdine | <i>a village the size of a city</i> |

Note: Magnus, maximus, summus and tantus take either the gen. or the abl.:

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| Vir magnī ingenīi }
vir magnō ingenīō } | <i>a man of great talents</i> |
|--|-------------------------------|

Note: The *genitive* is used to denote *number* and *kind*:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Classis centum nāvium | <i>a fleet of 100 ships</i> |
| fossa decem pedum (317) | <i>a trench ten feet wide (deep)</i> |
| ēius modī rēs | <i>things of such a kind</i> |

306. Ablātīvus absolūtus : Independent Ablative

The Ablative Absolute is an **ablative** connected **with a predicate** word (participle, substantive, adjective). As part of a sentence it denotes

time, cause, condition, concession, manner, means....

Dārēō rēgnante (=cum Dārē- us rēgnāret,) hoc factum est	when <i>Darius was reigning...</i> <i>D. reigning...; in the reign of...</i>
dux urbe captā rediit (=cum urbs capta esset)	after <i>the city was taken...</i> <i>having taken the city, he.....</i> <i>after (the) taking (of) the c...</i> <i>he took the city and retur'd</i>
tē auctōre (=cum tū auctor sīs) hōc faciam	since <i>you advise it...</i> <i>upon your advice</i>
nūllō prohibente (=quod nēmō prohibēbat) effūgit	because <i>nobody prevented it</i>
tē invītō (=cum nōlīs) hōc nōn faciam	since <i>you do not consent,</i> <i>I shall not do it</i>
tē invītō (=sī nōlīs) hōc nōn faciam	if <i>you should be displeased...</i> <i>against your wish...</i>
tē invītō (=quamquam nōn vīs) hōc faciam	although <i>you object,</i> <i>without your consent,</i>
nūllō negōtiō (=facillimē) id facere potuisti	<i>you were able to do this</i> without <i>any difficulty</i>
lintribus iūctīs flūmen trānsībant	by <i>tying together boats...</i> <i>on a bridge of boats.....</i>

Note: This ablative is called **absolūtus**, because its noun and predicate word are "loosened" from all grammatical relation to any part of the sentence.

If, however, the noun and its predicate participle are grammatically related to a part of the sentence, they must be joined to it; thus the participle (adjective) becomes the

307. PARTICIPIUM CONIUNCTUM

Invītus hōc fēcī (ego)	<i>though unwilling, I did it</i>
urbem captam cōservāvit	<i>after the city had been</i> <i>taken, he spared it</i>

tuī absentis memor sum	{ <i>I am mindful of you</i> <i>even when you are absent</i>
cōgitantī mihi perbeātī illī vidērī solent	{ <i>they seem to me very</i> <i>happy, whenever I think...</i>
amicō praesente dēlector	<i>I delight in his presence</i>
urbem cēpī, captam dēlēvī	<i>I took the c. and (then) de-</i> <i>stroyed it</i>

308. Translation of the participle **having** praised

The perfect participle active which is wanting in Latin, is expressed by *a*: the perfect participle of a deponent, *b*: the perfect participle passive (ablativus absolutus or participium coniunctum), *c*: secondary clauses:

<i>a.</i> caedem cōspicātī fūgērunt	<i>Having seen the slaughter,.....</i>
<i>b.</i> caede cōspectā fūgērunt	<i>when they had seen... they fled</i>
urbem captam dīripuit	<i>after taking the city he pl. it</i>
<i>c.</i> quī pugnāverant, rediērunt	<i>having fought ..., they returned</i>
eō postquam pervēnit (cum	{ <i>having arrived there.....</i>
pervēnisset, obsidēs poposcit)	<i>when he had arrived there...</i>

Note: Being praised is similarly translated:

Quī obsidentur, dēspērant	<i>being besieged, they despaired..</i>
----------------------------------	---

RELATIONS OF SPACE

309. The question "**Where?**" is answered by **in** with the ablative:

Names of towns and small islands, however, take the bare genitives (locatives) -ae and -ī; in all other cases the bare ablative:

Nātus est

in Italiā, **in** Crētā, **in** Euboeā, **in** urbe, **in** castrīs;

Rōmae, Corīnthī, Cypri, Athēnīs, Carthāgine (or -ī);

in urbe Rōmā (Position!)	<i>in the city of Rome</i>
(in) ipsa Rōmā	<i>in Rome itself</i>
Rōmae, (in) urbe maximā	<i>in the great city of Rome</i>
Athēnīs in forō	<i>on the marketplace of Athens</i>

310. Locus (in all meanings) and names of places with **tōtus** usually take the bare ablative:

hōc locō	<i>in this place</i>
(in) locō, suō locō	<i>at the right place or time</i>
tōtā urbe, tōtā Italiā	<i>in the whole city, throughout I.</i>

311. Place and route being often considered as means or instruments, are expressed by the ablative:

<i>terrā marīque</i>	<i>on or by land and sea</i>
<i>terrā, marī</i>	<i>by land, by sea</i>
<i>castrīs sē tenēre</i>	<i>keep in camp</i>
<i>Appiā viā proficīscī</i>	<i>set out by the Appian road</i>
<i>portā introīre, ērumpere</i>	<i>enter by, break out of the gate</i>
<i>tēctō aliquem recipere</i>	<i>receive into one's home</i>
<i>domō aliquem invītāre</i>	<i>invite into one's house</i>
<i>rēctā viā</i>	<i>straightway, right on</i>

312. Verbs of placing (exc. *imponere*) take **in** with the ablative:

<i>pōnō, locō, collocō, }</i> <i>cōstituō tē in mūrō }</i>	<i>I place you on the wall</i>
<i>praesidium Romae collocō</i>	<i>I station the garrison in Rome</i>
<i>cōsistō; cōsīdō hīc</i>	<i>I place myself; sit down here</i>
<i>oculōs in terrā dēfīgō</i>	<i>fix my eyes upon the ground</i>
<i>studium in unā re cōsūmō</i>	<i>put my energy on one thing</i>
<i>in sapientibus numerātur</i>	<i>is reckoned among the wise m.</i>
<i>spem in Deō pōnō</i>	<i>place my hope in God</i>
<i>in statuā īnscrībō</i>	<i>make an inscription upon the statue</i>

But *tibi lēgem impōnō, exercitum in nāvēs impōnō*

313. The question "Whence?" is answered by **ab, ex, dē**.

Names of towns and small islands, however, take the bare ablative:

Venit

ab urbe (*from*), **ex** urbe (*out of*), **dē** coelō (*from heaven*);
Rōmā, Corinthō, Cyprō, Athēnīs, Delphīs, Carthāgine.

ex urbe Rōmā (*Position!*) *out of the city of Rome*
Rōmā, **ex urbe** maximā *out of the great city of Rome*
Rōmā ex forō *from the forum in (of) Rome*

314. Latin "Whence?" corresponding to English
"Where?"

<i>ā fronte, ā tergō</i>	<i>in front, behind</i>
<i>ab omnibus partibus</i>	<i>on all sides</i>
<i>ex utrāque parte</i>	<i>at each side</i>
<i>ā septentrionibus</i>	<i>on the north</i>
<i>ab Sēquanīs</i>	<i>on the side of the Sequani</i>
<i>ā milibus passuum tribus</i>	<i>at a distance of 3 miles</i>
<i>ex itinere</i>	<i>on the way</i>

Hang, begin and side with

pendet ab , ex , in arbore	hangs (i.) on the tree
suspendō tē ab...	hang (tr.) you on...
unde ordiar, incipiam?	where shall I begin?
initium capit ā flumine	It begins at the river
Rhēnus oritur ex Lepontiis	it rises in the territory of
stāre ab aliquō	side with one
nāvem Rōmā cōnscendō	board the ship at Rome
Rōmā Kalendīs Iānuāriis	Rome, Jan. 1st (Date!)

315. The question "**Whither?**" is answered by **in** with the accusative. Names of towns and small islands, however, take the bare accusative.

Proficiscitur

in Italiam, to Italy; **in urbem**, into the city;
Rōmam, Corinthum, Cyprum, Delphōs, Carthāginem

in urbem Rōmam (Position!) into the city of Rome
 Rōmam, (in) urbem maximam into the great city of Rome
 Rōmam, in Italiam to Rome in Italy

316.

Latin "**Whither?**" corresponding to English "**Where?**"

Rōmam convēnimus	We assembled (i.) at Rome
in urbem, hūc pervēnī	I arrived in the city, here
ad Dēlum appellō (nāvem)	I land at Delos
Rōmam nuntiātum est	Intelligence was received at R.
sē abdunt in silvās }	they hide(themsv.) in the forest
sē (in) silvīs occultant }	
in silvīs abditī sunt	they are hidden in the forest
adventus in urbem	arrival in the city.

317. How long, wide, deep, high, thick, large, far?

Fossa ducentōs pedēs longa ,	200 feet long
fossa quīdecim pedēs lāta ,	15 feet wide
fossa quīdecim pedēs alta ,	15 feet deep
mūrus quīdecim pedēs altus ,	15 feet high
mūrus trium pēdum crassitūdine,	3 feet thick
vīcus oppidī magnitūdine,	as large as...
triduī vīam prōgressī sunt,	3 days' march
vīcus mille passūs ā Rōmā } distat or }	1 mile distant
vīcus mille passibus ā Rōmā } abest }	
rēx mille passūs ā Rōmā } cōnsēdit:	1 mile from R.
rēx mille passibus ā Rōmā }	

318.

Peculiarities

humī , humō, humī	<i>on, from, to the ground</i>
rūrī , rūre, rūs	<i>in, from, to the country</i>
domī , domō, domum	<i>at, from, (towards) home</i>
domī militiæque } domī bellique }	<i>in peace and in war</i>
in pāce, in bellō	<i>in peace, in war</i>
dom um revertimur	<i>we return home</i>

Note: Domī, domō, domum take attributes denoting possession: domī aliēnae, Caesaris; domō meā; domum suam.

But = **In** novā domō *in a new building*

RELATIONS OF TIME

319. The question "**When?**" is answered, in general, by the bare ablative:

diē, nocte	<i>by day, by night</i>
interdiū or lūce, noctū	<i>by day, by night</i>
illō diē, illā nocte	<i>on that day, in that night</i>
posterō diē	<i>on the following day</i>
multō diē, multā nocte	<i>late in the day, late in the night</i>
vespere or vespērī	<i>in the evening</i>
prīmā lūce	<i>at daybreak</i>
māne	<i>in the morning</i>
hōrā decimā (107)	<i>at 10 o'clock</i>
meridiē	<i>at noon</i>
annō decimō	<i>in the year ten</i>
proximō annō	<i>last year, next year</i>
superiōre annō	<i>in the preceding year</i>
<hr/>	
vēre, aestate	<i>in spring, in summer</i>
autumnō, hieme	<i>in fall, in winter</i>
ineunte or prīmō vēre	<i>at the beginning of spring</i>
mediā, extrēmā hieme	<i>in the middle, at the end of winter</i>
ortū, occāsū sōlis	<i>at sunrise, at sunset</i> [ter
<hr/>	
comitiis	<i>at the election</i>
lūdīs	<i>at the time of the games</i>
<hr/>	
antīquīs temporibus	<i>in ancient times</i>
temporib us Lycurgī	<i>at the time of Lycurgus</i>
patrum memoriā	<i>at the time of our fathers</i>

adventū meō	<i>at my arrival</i>
hōrum discessū = {	
cum discessissent }	<i>at their departure</i>

prīmā pueritiā	<i>at the beginning of boyhood</i>
extrēmā pueritiā	<i>at the end of boyhood</i>
summā senectūte	<i>in extreme old age</i>
prīmō Pūnicō bellō	<i>in the first Punic war</i>
quārtō cōsulātū	<i>in his fourth consulship</i>

initiō, principiō	<i>at the beginning</i>
tempore, suō tempore	} <i>at the right time</i>
ad tempus, ad diem	

Note: In some expressions, especially when time **and** circumstances are denoted, **in** with the ablative is required:

bis in diē	<i>twice a (i. e. every) year</i>
in eō tempore	<i>in this critical situation</i>
in senectūte	<i>in an old age (state)</i>
in summā senectūte	<i>in spite of old age</i>
in cōsulātū nostrō	<i>in my consulship (office)</i>

320. How long before or after ?

Paulō ante, multō post	<i>shortly before, long after</i>
decem annīs ante	} <i>ten years before</i>
ante decem annōs	
decimō annō ante	
decimō ante annō	
annō post, trienniō post	<i>one, three years after</i>
annō post Christum nātum	<i>one year after the b. of Christ</i>
annō ante quam nātus est	<i>a year before his birth</i>
prīdiē quam nātus est	<i>the day before his birth</i>
annō post quam nātus erat	<i>a year after his birth</i>
postridiē quam nātus erat	<i>the day after his birth</i>

abhinc decem annōs	} <i>ten years ago to-day</i>
his decem annīs	
decem annīs ante	

321. Other relations of Time

(See Prepositions pg. 116 sqq.)

ab or ex.....ad.....	from..... till.....
rem decem diēs differō	<i>put it off for ten days</i>
decem annōs rēgnāvit	<i>he reigned ten years</i>
intra or ante decimum annum	before the end of....
trienniō id perficiēs	within three years....
trienniō eō nōn vēnit	since three years.....
tertium iam diem abest	since three days.....
decem annōs nātus	} ten years old
decem annōrum puer	
decimum annum agēs	<i>in his tenth year</i>
in diēs māior	<i>greater from day to day</i>

322. QUESTIONS

Quis, quī puer fēcit?	<i>Who, which boy did it?</i>
Quid, ubi, quō modo?	<i>What? when? how?</i>
a. Nōne fēcistī?	<i>You did it, did you not?</i>
Fēcī; fēcī vērō.	<i>Yes; I did it.</i>
b. Num fēcistī?	<i>You did not do it, did you?</i>
Nōn fēcī.	<i>No.</i>
c. Sōlusne fēcistī?	<i>Did you do it alone?</i>
Sōlus.	<i>Yes.</i>
d. Tū revertī audēs?	<i>You dare to come back?</i>

Note: **Yes** is often rendered by *ita est*; *sānē*; *certē*;**No** is often rendered by *nōn ita*; *minimē* (*vērō*).

Utrum vērum est an falsum ?	} <i>Is it true or false?</i>
vērum (ne) est an falsum ?	
utrum vērum est an nōn ?	} <i>Is it true or not?</i>
vērum (ne) est an nōn ?	

323. Indirect Questions

(Depending on verba interrogandī, sentiendī and dicendī, on interest and rēfert)

Multum interest **quis fēcerit**.Quaerit velisne (= **num** velīs) sibi respondēre.Dicam vērum (**ne**) **an** falsum **sit**.dicam utrum vērum **an** falsum sit.dicam utrum vērum sit **necne** } (...true or not).dicam vērum (**ne**) sit **necne** }

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107

Sections

Pages 85 to 107

Sections

	A.	
Ab, a		240, 300, 304, 314
Abbreviated forms 202.		
Abdo	282.	316
Abeo		234
Abhinc		320
Abhorreo	68.	300
Abicio		412.
Abigo		321.
Ablative		300 sqq.
— absolute		306
Abluo	369.	
Abnuo		370.
Abstergeo	88.	
Abstineo	50.	300
Absum		223, 225
Abundantia ,	subst. 65; adj. 86	
Abutor		517.
Ac, atque		245
Accedit		585.
Accedo		226.
Accendo	334.	270
Accent		8, 127, 203
Accerso	142.	
Accidit		581.
Accio		27.
Accipio		403.
Accusative		282 sqq.
— with Infinitive ..		286
Accuso		288, 297
Acuo	356.	
Ad	241, 299	
Address, form of ..	17, 22, 32	
Adeo, (verb)		235, 283
Adhibeo	33.	
Adimo	305.	297
Adipiscor		523.
Adiuvo	19.	283
Adjectives, I - IId		30
IIId		46
— used as Subst...		40, 51, 147
Admoneo	37.	297
Adolesco		434.
Adorior		550.
Adsum		223, 225, 298, 3
Adulor		534.
Advenio		475. 316

Adverbs		92, 100, 114. 115 269
Advesperascit	564.	
Aer		72
Aestimo		284, 297, 9-10
Aether		72
Affero		229
Afficio		304
Affligo		179.
Aggredior		518.
Agnosco		429.
Ago		319.
Agreement		31, 271 sqq.
Aio		593.
Algeo		99.
Aliquis		141
Alius, aliud		154, 155, 297, 5
Allicio		398.
Allido		232.
Alo		152.
Alter		104, 154, 157
Alteruter		157
Ambigo		323.
Ambio		235
Ambo		103, 152
Amburo		221.
Amicio		481.
Amitto		244.
Amplector		511.
Amplius, more than		303
And		245, 249 note; 307
— also		245
— indeed		245, 4
— not		245
Ango		353.
Animadverto		349.
Annuo		371.
Ante		241, 320
Antecedent		133, 277
Antecello		294.
Antefero		229
Antepono		149.
Antequam		251
Aperio		458.
Apiece		199
Appareo		61.

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107	Sections	Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Apparet573.		Caleo 63.	270
Appellatives	51, 276, 278	Cano271.	
Appello265.	284	Capesso143.	
Appellor.....	280	Capio402.	
Appositives	275 sqq.	Capitals	1
Aptus ad	298	Caput	45
Arbitror.....483.		Cardinals	102, 103, 108, 109
Arceo 28.		Careo 58.	300
Arcesso141.		Caro	41
Ardeo..... 96.		Carpo211.	
Arguo357. 288		Case	16
Arrideo 92.		— Endings	36, 37, 54, 57
As160.	251, 273, 274, 280 284 296	— Endings of adj.	50, participles 52
Ascendo338.		Causap.120.	297, 4, 299
Aspergo205.		Caveo112.	
Assentior.....544. 283		Cedo, say, give600.	
Assequor.....514.		Cedo225.	300
Assuefacio407. 288, 5 270		Celo 285	
Assuesco - consuesco 432, 270		Cenatus	199
Assuetus	304, 8	Censeo 45.	
Asyndeton	245, 1	Cerno128.	
Atque	245	Certe, certo	96, e
—adeo 246, 2		Certiorum facio	285
At, atqui	247	Characters	1
Attendo278.		Cieo 26.	
Attinet.....588.		Cingo192.	
Attingo276.		Circum —.....	283
Attributes	275 sqq.	Circundo 12.	298, 5
Audeo..... 198		Circumsedeo.....118.	283
Audiens sum	298	Circumsisto292.	283
Aufero..... 229, 298, 3		Circumsto 14.	283
Aufugio417.		Claudo227.	
Augeo 71. 270		Coalesco443.	
Aut (- aut)	246, 250	Coarguo358.	
Autem	247	Coemo304.	
Auxilior 298		Coepti590.	
Aveo..... 79.		Coerceo 29.	
		Cognosco428.	
		Cogo324.	285, 5; 288, 5, 316 270
B.		Collectiva	14
Being praised	308	Colligo314.	
Bibo288.		Colloco 312	
Blandior553.		Colloquor509.	
Bos 68		Colo153.	
Both	103, 158	Comburo220.	270
By (means of)	25, 304	Committo245.	
C.		Commonefacio 297	
Caedo254. 270		Commoneo..... 297	
Cado249. 270		Communia	12
Calefacio..... 203, 270		Como.....307.	

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107

Sections

Pages 85 to 107

Sections

Comparative, decl.	77		Contingit	582.	
Comparison of adj.	73, 83, 88		Contundo	296.	
— of adverbs	97		Convalesco	441.	
Comperio	473.		Convenio	476.	283, 316
Compleo	25.		Convenit	579.	
Composition of words.	253		Convinco	330.	270, 2
Compungo	274.		Coquo	168.	
Concido	253, 256.		Corrigo	183.	
Concino	272.		Corrumpo	332.	
Concoquo	169.		Credo	283.	298, 4
Concupisco	445.		Creo	284	
Concutio	399.		Cresco	426.	270
Conducit	577.		Cubo	3.	
Conduco	176.		Cum, Preposition	240, 304	
Conecto	207.		— Position of	117, 132, 134	
Confero	229, 270, 3		— Conjunction	251	
Conficio	410.	237, Note	— cumque	135, 163, 165, 168	
Confido	198, 290		Cum — tum	250	
Confisus	304, 10		Cunctor	484.	
Confiteor	501.		Cupio	388.	288, 4
Confligo	181.		Curro	257.	
Confodio	415.				
Confringo	327.				
Confugio	418.				
Congredior	519.				
Congruo	376.				
Conjugation	169 sqq.				
Coniungo	195.				
Coniveo	80.				
Conjunctions	244 sqq.				
— coord.	245 sqq.				
— subord.	51				
Conquiro	139.				
Conscribo	210.				
Consenesco	438.				
Consentio	470.				
Consequor	515.				
Consero	133; 157.				
Consido	344.	312			
Consisto	289.	312, 270			
Conspicio	392.				
Constat	576.				
Constituo	365.	312, 270			
Consto	16.	247			
Constructio ad sensum	279				
Consuesco	432.				
Consulo	156.				
Contemno	217.				
Contendo	279.				
Conticesco	439.				
Contineo	51.				

D.

Damno	297	
Dates	107	
Dative	298	
— with Gerundive	192	
De	240.	299
Dea	65	
Debeo	35.	
Decerno	129.	
Decerpo	212.	
Decet	565.	
Decipio	404.	
Declensions	20.	27, 36, 53, 57
— of adj. and part.	46 sqq.	
— of defect. and abundantia	64 sqq.	
— of Greek nouns	69 sqq.	
Dedecet	566.	
Dedisco	420.	
Dedo	284.	
Defectiva, nouns ...	60, 88, verbs 220	
Defendo	341.	300
Defero	229	
Deficio	283	
Defleo	23.	
Dego	325.	
Degrees of Comparison	73, 91	
Deleo	21.	
Deligo	315.	284
Demergo	201.	

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107	Sections	Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Demeto248.		Do, laudi do..... 11.	298, 7
Demo.....308.	298, 3	Doceo..... 47.	285
Deponents	193 sqq.	Doleo..... 59.	283
— passive of	197	Domi, domus	55, 56, 318
Deposco422.		Domo (verb)..... 3.	
Deprehendo343.		Dono 298, 5	
Derigo184.		Dubito..... 283, 4; 288	
Derivation of words 253		Duco175. 208.	284, 297
Descendo.....339.		Duo, decl.	102, in cpds. 105
Desero158.			E.
Desilio461.		Each, apiece	109
Desino136.		Ecquis	145
Desisto 290.		Edo, give out.....285.	
Despero mihi	283	Edo, eat 227	
Desum.....	223, 225	Educo, lead forth...177.	300
Deterreo 44.	300	Effero.....	229, 270, 3
Detineo 53.		Effloresco.....436.	
Detondeo.....109.		Effugio te.....	283
Detraho 298, 3		Egeo 64.	
Deus	33, 66	Eius	120, 122, 124 297, 6, 298, 6
Devertor 198		Elicio.....385.	
Diaeresis	4, 5 and 6	Eludo..... 234.	
Dicas, diceres	280	Emergo 203.	
Dico170.	298, 7, b	Emineo..... 66.	
Dicor 296, 3		Emo.....303.	297
Differo 229		Enclitics, que, ve, ne	8, 243
Diffido..... 198		Enim	245, 248
Diffindo.....300.		Fo, verb 232, 304	
Digero219.	270, 2	Eo, adverb	163
Dignus	304, 10	Ergo	249
Diligo.....316.		Eripio 298, 3	
Dimico 8.		Esurio..... 482.	
Dimitto246.		Et (— et)	245, 250
Dirigo = <i>derigo</i>184.		— in numerals	105
Dirimo306.		— with adjectives	245, 4
Diripio.....391.		Etenim	248
Diruo374.		Etiam	91, 245
Dis	300	Evado241.	
Disco419.		Evanesco.....452.	
Disiungo 196.		Evenio, evenit583.	
Displiceo 40.		Everto350.	
Dissentio471.		Exardesco.....442.	
Dissero159.		Excello295.	
Distineo 54.		Excolo154.	
Distinguo381.		Excudo340.	
Disto 17.		Exerceo30, 31.	
Distributives	104, 109	Existimor 296, 3	
— replaced by card.	109, note	Expedi578.	
— used as cardinals	109, b	Expergiscor525.	
Divido230.			

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107	Sections	Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Experior..... 545.		Fugio..... 416	
Explodo..... 236.		Fugit..... 571.	
Expono..... 150.		Fulcio..... 463.	
Exprimo..... 223.		Fulgeo..... 100.	
Exstinguo..... 282.		Fulget..... 558.	
Exsulto..... 283		Fundo..... 333.	
Extendo..... 280.		Fungor..... 506.	
Extollo..... 229		Furo..... 354.	
Extremus 86, 274, c		Future Imperative 204	
Exuo 361.		G.	
F.		Gaudeo..... 198, 283, 3, 4; 288	
Facere, accent in cpds. 8		Gemo..... 165.	
Facio..... 406. 284, e		Genders, how determined, 11.	
Fallit..... 570.		—general rules..... 12	
Fallo..... 261,		—particular rules..... 26, 34, 38, 56, 59	
Familia 65		Genitive 297, 276, 4; 119	
Fando audio..... 590.		Gero..... 218 284. a	
Fateor..... 500.		Gerundive 192	
Faveo..... 113.		Gigno..... 147.	
Perio..... 480.		Glorior..... 485. 283	
Fero..... 228, 288		Gratis 297	
Fertur, feruntur..... 296		Gratulor..... 486.	
Fido..... 198		Greek words 69 sqq.	
Figo..... 200.		Grus 68	
Filia, filius 65, 32		H.	
Findo..... 299. 270, 4		Habeo..... 32.	
Fingo..... 197.		—have (as)..... 284, b; 298, 6	
Finitum verbum .. 169 sqq.		— regard as..... 284, c; 280, 2	
Fio..... 237		Habeor..... 280, 297, 9	
—with nom..... 280, 2		Haereo..... 97.	
—with gen..... 297, 6		Haurio..... 468.	
—with abl..... 237		Have, ave..... 51, 9.	
First 88, 273		Having praised 308	
Fit..... 580.		Hic (pron.) 126; (adv.) 163	
Flagito..... 285		High 86, 87, 317	
Flecto..... 206.		How long, wide, deep etc. 320	
Fleo..... 22.		Humi, humus 34, 318	
Floreo..... 67		I.	
Fluo..... 285		I..... 4, 10 and 11	
Fodio..... 414		Iaceo..... 69.	
For (pro, ut) 240, 274		Iacio and compounds..... 411; 4, 11	
—and against..... 298, 1		Id aetatis 283	
Fore..... 221, 289, Note		Idoneus ad 298, 1	
Foveo..... 114.		Igitur 249	
Fractions 108		Ignosco..... 430.	
Frango..... 326.		Ille 126, 276. 3 and 4	
Fremo..... 164.		Illic, accent of 127	
Fretus 304, 10			
Frigeo..... 82.			
Fruor..... 504.			

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107	Sections	Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Illicio396.		Intueor498.	
Imbuo360.		Invado240.	
Imitor te 283		Invenio477.	
Immineo 82.		Inveterasco433.	
Impendeo111.		Invideo.....123. 298, 2	
Impendo269.		Ipse 129, 130 b	
Imperative 179, 203, 204		Irascor526.	
Imperator 276		Irrepo.....215.	
Impersonal verbs.. 214		Irrideo..... 93.	
Impersonal expressions 287		Is, ea, id 120, 245, 4	
Impertior540.		Iste 126, 127, Note 1	
Impono151. 312		Itaque 249	
In 239, 309, 312, 315-319		Iubeo..... 89. 288. 2 290	
Incendo335. 270		Iubeor 296, 3	
Inchoatives, page 98		lugerum 66. b	
Incido, fall into.....250.		Iungo194.	
Incido, cut into.....255. 312		Iuppiter 68	
Incipio590. 314		Iuratus.....199.	
Includo228.		Iuro290.	
Incolo.....155.		Iussu..... 64	
Increpo 5.		Iuvat.....569.	
Incumbo145.		Iuvo 18. 283	
Indeclinables 12, 44, 60		L.	
Indefinite pronouns 141 sqq.		Labor507.	
— subject 280		Lacesso144.	
Indigeo 65.		Laedo.....231.	
Indignor 288		Laetor 283	
Indirect questions 323, 288		Lamentor 283	
Iudulgeo101.		Largior.....535.	
Induo362.		Last 86, 88, 89, 273	
Ineo 235		Lateo 70.	
Infero 229		Laudi do 298, 7	
Infimus 86, 274, c.		Lavo..... 20.	
Infinite(ly) 106		Lego311.	
Infinitive, meaning of 289		Libero 300	
Ingravesco453.		Libet.....567.	
Inquam.....594.		Liceor.....493.	
Inscribo..... 312		Licet.....568.	
Insculpo214. 312		Like 274	
Insero.....134. 160		Liquet574.	
Insimulo 288		Locative 55, 309, 318	
Insuetus 304, 8		Loco (verb)312.	
Insum 223, 225		Loco, as 274	
Intellego317.		Locus 66	
Intercludo.....229.		Longe with superlative 91	
Intereo 234		Longius, more than 303	
Interest589. 297, 11		Loquor.....508.	
Interjections 252		Luceo.....103.	
intersum 223, 225		Lucescit, lucet 563, 562.	
Intransitive verbs 205, note; 218, 270			

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 197	Sections	Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Ludo.....233.	304	Multo, by far	91, 320
Lugeo104.	283, 3	Multus, declined...	85
Luo367, 368.			
	M.		N.
Maereo 83.	283, 3	Nam, namque	248
Magis	81, 98, 99	Nanciscor524.	
Magnam partem ...	283, 6	Nascor..... 529.	
Magni, magno	297, 9 and 10	Natu	64
Maior	90, 303	Natus	303
Malo.....	230, 288	Ne, lest	141, 251
Maneo 98.	280	Necessarius ad	298, 1
Maturesco450.		Necesse est	287
Maxime	81, 98, 99	Neglego318.	
Medeor502.	298, 2	Nego.....	294
Medius	274	Nemo	146, 147
Memini591.	297	Neo	24.
Mentior536.		Nequeo 236	
Mereor.....	198	Ne- quidem	245
Metior547.		Nescio.....456.	
- met	121	Neuter, pronunc. etc.	4, 154, 146, 157
Meto.....	247.	Neuter pronouns as objects	283, 285
Metuo377.		Nihil	146, 283, 6
Meus	32, 122, 297, 6, 11; 298, 6	Ningit561.	
Mico 7.		Niteo..... 71.	
Milia, decl.	102	Nitor.....510.	
Millesimus, millies	106	Noceo 38.	
Minitor. minor, 487, 488.	290	Noli	231
Minor, comparative	90, 303	Nolo	230, 288, 294
Minoris, minimi ...	297, 9 and 10	Nominative	280
Minuo363.	270	- with Infinitive ..	296
Minus, less than ...	303	Nomine	274
Mirror.....	283, 3	Non	250
Misceo 48.		Nosco427.	
Miseret555.		Nouns, classes of ..	9
Misereor495.		Nubo.....208.	298, 2
Miseror46.		Nudo.....	300
Mitto243.	298, 7	Nullus	146, 154
Mobilis	13	Num	322, 323
Modo (-modo), etc.	250	Num quis	145
Molior537.		Numerals	100 sqq.
Molo.....162.		Numero (abl.)	274
Months, names of	51	Nuntio.....	316
Mordeo.....105.			
More, most	74, 91, 97, 98		O.
Morior520.		Obdormisco446.	
Moror489.		Obduresco.....449.	
Moveo115.	301	Obeo.....	235
Multiplication Table	112	Oblino.....132.	270, 4
Multo (verb)	297	Obliviscor.....527.	297
		Obmutesco451.	
		Obruo.....375.	197

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107	Sections	Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Obsideo120.		Paulo	91, 320
Obsolesco.....435.		Paulum	97, b
Obsum	223, 225	Pellicio	397.
Obtineo.....55.		Pello.....264.	
Obtrecto.....	298. 2	Pendeo.....110.	314, 270
Obtundo.....	297.	Pendo.....	268.
Occido.....251 253. 270		People, indefinite subject	280
O'clock	107	Per-, per	91, 241; 274 c
Odi	592.	Perago.....	320.
Offero	229	Percello	293.
Old	90. 321	Percrebresco	448.
Oleo	72.	Percutio.....	400.
Omnes	152	Perdo.....	234
One, impersonal...	280	Pereo.....	234
Opem ferre	298	Perfruor	505.
Operio.....459. 270, 4		Pergo	186.
Opitulator	490.	Perhorresco.....	437.
Oportet.....	556, 287, Note	Periphrastic Conjugation	191
Opperior	546. 270, 4	Perlego.....	313.
Opprimo.....	224.	Permulseo	90.
Optimus quisque...	149	Pepetior.....	522.
Ordinals	104, 107	Persolvo.....	379.
Ordior	548. 314	Persuadeo	95. 283, 4; 298, 2
Orior.....	549. 314	Pertimesco	440.
Oro.....	285	Pertineo	52.
Or rather	246	Pervenio	478. 316
Os, bone; os, mouth	41	Peto	137.
Ostendo.....	281.	Phonetic changes...	268
P.		Phonology	1
Paciscor.....	198	Piget.....	552.
Paenitet	551.	Pingo.....	198.
Pando	347.	Placeo	39.
Par	36	Placet	586.
Parco	263. 298, 2	Plaudo	235.
Pareo.....	60. 298, 3; 270, 4	Plebs	67
Pario.....	401. 270, 4	Plerique	85 d
Parisyllables	36, 37	Pluit.....	560.
Participium coniunctum	307	Pluralia tantum	62, 63, 109, 158
Participles declined	51, 52	Pluris, plurimi	297, 9 and 10
Particles, classes of	9	Plus, more than	303
Partior.....	539.	Poema	72
Parvi, parvo	297, 9 and 10	Polleo.....	84.
Pasco, pascor	424, 425.	Polliceor	494. 280
Passive of Deponents	197	Polysyndeton	245
Passive Participles	199, 200	Pono.....	148. 312
Patefacio	408. 270	Porrigo.....	185.
Pateo.....	73. 270	Posco	421. 285, 4
Patet.....	575.	Position of Prepositions	242
Patior.....	521. 288	—of —que, —ve, —ne	243
		—of Attributes.....	276

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Possideo121.	270, 4
Possido345.	270, 4
Possum	226, 283, 4; 290
Post	241, 320
Potior541.	
Poto, potus	1. 199
Praebeo.....	36. 284
Praedico173.	
Praeditus	304, 10
Praefero	229
Praestat587.	
Praesto.....	15. 284, 281
Praesum	223, 225
Praeter	283
Praetereo.....	235
Praeterit572.	
Praising attributes	276
P'randeo, pransus	125. 199
Precor491.	
Predicate (nouns)..	271, 280, 2
Prehendo.....342.	
Premo222.	
Prepositions	238 sqq.
Primo, primum	115
Primus	273, 274
Principal Parts	177
Pro	240, 274, 284
Pro nihilo	297, 9
Prodeo	234
Proficiscor530.	
Prohibeo.....	34. 288, 5; 300
Proicio.....413.	
Proinde ..	248
Promo309.	
Pronominal adjunct.	154, 155
Pronominal advbs.	163-168
Pronouns	116 sqq.
Pronunciation	3, 4
Prosterno127.	
Prosum	223, 225
Provideo124.	298
- pte	175
Pudet553.	
Pungo273.	
Purpose, how expressed,	299
Puto284.	294, 297, 9
Putor	280, 296, 3

Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Q.	
Qua, Correlatives..	163
Quaero.....138.	285
Quaeso.....596.	
Qualis	160
Quam	91, 167, 303, 251
- diu, Correl. etc. ..	165, 251
Quando, Correl.	165
Quant, quanto	297, 9 and 10, 304
Quantity of Syll. and Vowels	7
- que, Accent, Position etc 8, 243, 255, 2
Queo.....	236
Queror512.	283, 3
Questions	322, 323
Qui, Relative..	132, 299
- Interrog. Indef.	137, 140, 141
Quiesco431.	
Quis	136, 141, 160
Quisque	149, 152
Quo, Correlatives..	163
Quo — eo	304, 4
Quoque	245
Quod, Correlatives	160
Conjunction	251, 288, 3
Quotus quisque ...	149
R.	
Rado.....237.	
Rapio390.	
Rather	76, 246
Recido252.	
Recordor	297, 12
Recurro259.	
Redarguo359.	
Reddo287.	284
Redeo234	
Refello.....262.	
Refercio462.	
Refero	229
Refert557.	297
Reflexive	116, 124, 130, 270
Rego.....182.	
Relinquo.....328.	298, 7
Reminiscor528.	297, 12
Reor503.	
Repello267.	
Reperio472.	
Reposco423.	285, 4
Repuerasco454.	

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107	Sections	Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Resisto.....291.		Sono 9.	
Rescindo302.		Sortior542.	
Respondeo107		Spargo204.	
Respuo.....372.		Sperno130.	
Restat.....584.		Spero 290	
Reticeo..... 42.		Splendeo 85.	
Retineo 56.		Spondeo106.	
Retundo298.		Statuo364.	
Revertor 198		Stem 19	
Revivisco.....444.		Sterno126.	
Rideo 91. 283		Sto 13. 297, 314	
Rodo.....238.		Strepto166.	
Rogo..... 285		Stringo.....199.	
Rules of Gender ... 11, 12. 26, 34		Struo 386.	
	56, 59	Studeo 75. 283, 4; 298, 2	
Rumpo, ruo...331, 373.		Stupeo 76. 270, 1	
Rus, rure, ruri 318		Suadeo 94.	
S.		Subigo322	
Saepio464.		Subject 280, 286	
Salio460.		Subjective of	
Salve.....597.		Future 192	
Sancio465.		Subvenio479. 298, 3	
Sapio.....389.		Succendo.....336.	
Sarcio466.		Succurro 260. 298, 3	
Satis with genitive 297		Sum, auxil. and	
Scalpo.....213.		independent 280, 281	
Scando337.		— with Genitive : 97, 6	
Scindo301.		with Dative 298, 7	
Scio460.		Summus 86, 274	
Scisco447.		Sumo310.	
Scribo.....209.		Supersedere119. 300	
Se 300		Supines 184, 299, f.	
Seco 6.		Supplico 298	
Sed 247		Surgo187.	
Sedeo117.		Suscenseo 46.	
Self 130		Suscipio405.	
Semideponents ... 198		Suspendo.....270. 270, 1	
Sentio469.		Suspicio, suspicor...393. 270, 2	
Separation of Syl-		Sustineo 57.	
lables 6		Suus 124	
Sepelio457.		Syllables 5	
Sequor513. 283		T.	
Sero132, 157.		Taceo 41.	
Serpo216.		Taedet554.	
Sescenti 106		Tam 167	
Sileo 74.		Tamquam 274, a	
Similis 297, 3		Tango.....275.	
Sino, sinor135. 288, 2; 296, 3		Tanti, quanti 297, 9 and 10	
Sis 231		Tego188.	
Soleo 198		Tendo.....277.	
Solve378.		Teneo 49.	
		Tero140.	

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107	Sections	Pages 85 to 107	Sections
Terreo..... 43.		V.	
Texo.....161.		Vaco 301	
Therefore 249		Vacuefacio409.	
They, indef. subj. 280		Vado242.	
Timeo 77. 298, 4		Valeo, vale..... 62. 551. 283, 4	
Tingo193.		Veho, vehor ...190; 191. 304	
Tollo..... 229		Vel 91, 246, 250	
Tonat559.		Velim 288	
Tondeo.....108.		Vello351.	
Tono..... 10.		Vendo, veneo..... 234, 297	
Too 74, 94, 97		Venio 474. 298, 7	
Torqueo 87.		Venit in mentem ... 297, 12	
Trado286.		Verbs 169 sqq.	
Traditur, traduntur 296		Verbum finitum ... 169	
Traho.....189.		Vere, vero 96, e	
Trans - 283, 2		Vereor499.	
Transeo 235		Vergo.....355.	
Transitive 205, 270, 282, 283		Versor492.	
Transport 285		Verto348. 298, 7	
Tremo167.		Very 74, 91, 97	
Tribuo366.		Vescor532.	
Trini, uni 110, 111		Veto..... 4. 288, 2; 290, 294	
Trudo239.		Vetor 296. 3	
Tueor.....497. 300		Video, videor.....122. 280, 2, 296	
U.		Vigeo 78.	
Ubi, Correlatives .. 163		Vincio467.	
Ulcisor531.		Vinco329. 304, 270, 4	
Ullus 146, 154		Viso352.	
Unde, Correlatives 163		Vivo..... 38. 270, 4	
Ungo, unguo ...283 284.		Vocative 32	
Uni 110, 111, 154		Voco.....284	
Unus, decl., ...in cpds 102, 105, 154		Volo, velle 230, 231, 288, 290	
Urbs 276, 309, 313, 315		Volvo..... 380.	
Urgeo102.		Vomo.163.	
Ut, Correlatives ... 167		Voveo.....116.	
Conjunction 251, 274,a; 299		W.	
Uter, uterque etc. .. 138, 150, 157, 158		When etc. 319 sqq.	
Utilis ad 298, 1		Where, Whither	
Utor516.		etc. 309 sqq.	

Corrigenda

Page	Line	Read	instead of
10	6 from below	with	or
67	3 " "	ūrum	ūsūm
93	18 " "	cecīnī	cecīnī
128	15 " "	quam diū	quam diu
128	2 " "	sī, quandōquidem	si, quandoquidem
129	5 " "	nē	ne
159	16 from above	<i>in (his etc.) old age</i>	<i>in an old age</i>
160	8 " "	<i>since two days</i>	<i>since three days</i>



AUG 24 1906

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 037 263 3